

TEI Lite: Encoding for Interchange: an introduction to the TEI  
— Final revised edition for TEI P5

Lou Burnard and C. M. Sperberg-McQueen

January 17, 2013

August 2012



## Prefatory note

TEI Lite was the name adopted for what the TEI editors originally conceived of as a simple demonstration of how the TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) encoding scheme might be adopted to meet 90% of the needs of 90% of the TEI user community. In retrospect, it was predictable that many people should imagine TEI Lite to be all there is to TEI, or find TEI Lite to be far too heavy for their needs.

The original TEI Lite (1996) was based largely on observations of existing and previous practice in the encoding of texts, particularly as manifest in the collections of the Oxford Text Archive and other collections of the period. It is therefore unsurprising that it seems to have become, if not a *de facto* standard, at least a common point of departure for electronic text centres and encoding projects world wide. Maybe the fact that we actually produced this shortish, readable, manual for it also helped.

Early adopters of TEI Lite included a number of Electronic Text Centers and digital library initiatives. It was also adopted as the basis for some early TEI-conformant authoring systems, and as the basis for introductory tutorials, many of them in languages other than English (see further the list of legacy versions at <http://www.tei-c.org/Lite/>).

In 2002, following the publication of TEI P4 , the XML version of the TEI Guidelines, which uses the generation of TEI Lite as an example of the TEI modification mechanism, the opportunity was taken to produce a lightly revised XML-conformant version. In 2006, a more substantially revised version based on TEI P5 was produced; this reflected the many changes between TEI P4 and TEI P5, but was not otherwise significantly different. In 2012, the TEI Technical Council, decided that a final revision should be undertaken to ensure that the documentation remained consistent with the latest (2.1) release of TEI P5. This version uses a recently added mechanism in the TEI customization architecture, which permits a customization to define only the TEI elements to be included in a schema, rather than the elements to be excluded from it. As such it is probably more resilient to change than earlier versions.

Lou Burnard, August 2012



---

This document provides an introduction to the recommendations of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI), by describing a specific subset of the full TEI encoding scheme. The scheme documented here can be used to encode a wide variety of commonly encountered textual features, in such a way as to maximize the usability of electronic transcriptions and to facilitate their interchange among scholars using different computer systems. It is fully compatible with the full TEI scheme, as defined by TEI document P5, *Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange*, as of February 2006, and available from the TEI Consortium website at <http://www.tei-c.org>.

## 1 Introduction

The Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines are addressed to anyone who wants to interchange information stored in an electronic form. They emphasize the interchange of textual information, but other forms of information such as images and sound are also addressed. The Guidelines are equally applicable in the creation of new resources and in the interchange of existing ones.

The Guidelines provide a means of making explicit certain features of a text in such a way as to aid the processing of that text by computer software running on different machines. This process of making explicit we call *markup* or *encoding*. Any textual representation on a computer uses some form of markup; the TEI came into being partly because of the enormous variety of mutually incomprehensible encoding schemes currently besetting scholarship, and partly because of the expanding range of scholarly uses now being identified for texts in electronic form.

The TEI Guidelines describe an encoding scheme which can be expressed using a number of different formal languages. The first editions of the Guidelines used the *Standard Generalized Markup Language* (SGML); since 2002, this has been replaced by the use of the Extensible Markup Language (XML). These markup languages have in common the definition of text in terms of *elements* and *attributes*, and rules governing their appearance within a text. The TEI's use of XML is ambitious in its complexity and generality, but it is fundamentally no different from that of any other XML markup scheme, and so any general-purpose XML-aware software is able to process TEI-conformant texts.

Since 2001, the TEI has been a community initiative supported by an international membership consortium. It was originally an international research project sponsored by the Association for Computers and the Humanities, the Association for Computational Linguistics, and the Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing, with substantial funding over its first five years from the U.S. National Endowment for the Humanities, Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the Social Science and Humanities Research Council of Canada and others. The Guidelines were first published in May 1994, after six years of development involving many hundreds of scholars from different academic disciplines worldwide. During the years that followed, the Guidelines became increasingly influential in the development of the digital library, in the language industries, and even in the development of the World Wide Web itself. The TEI Consortium was set up in January 2001, and a year later produced an edition of the Guidelines entirely revised for XML compatibility. In 2004, it set about a major revision of the Guidelines to take full advantage of new schema languages, the first release of which appeared in 2005. This revision of the TEI Lite document conforms to version 2.1 of this most recent edition of the Guidelines, TEI P5, released in June 2012.

At the outset of its work, the overall goals of the TEI were defined by the closing statement of a planning conference held at Vassar College, N.Y., in November, 1987; these Poughkeepsie Principles were further elaborated in a series of design documents. The Guidelines, say these design documents, should:

- suffice to represent the textual features needed for research;

- be simple, clear, and concrete;
- be easy for researchers to use without special-purpose software;
- allow the rigorous definition and efficient processing of texts;
- provide for user-defined extensions;
- conform to existing and emergent standards.

The world of scholarship is large and diverse. For the Guidelines to have wide acceptability, it was important to ensure that:

1. the common core of textual features be easily shared;
2. additional specialist features be easy to add to (or remove from) a text;
3. multiple parallel encodings of the same feature should be possible;
4. the richness of markup should be user-defined, with a very small minimal requirement;
5. adequate documentation of the text and its encoding should be provided.

The present document describes a manageable selection from the extensive set of elements and recommendations resulting from those design goals, which is called *TEI Lite*.

In selecting from the several hundred elements defined by the full TEI scheme, we have tried to identify a useful starter set, comprising the elements which almost every user should know about. Experience working with TEI Lite will be invaluable in understanding the full TEI scheme and in knowing how to integrate specialized parts of it into the general TEI framework.

Our goals in defining this subset may be summarized as follows:

- it should be able to handle adequately a reasonably wide variety of texts, at the level of detail found in existing practice (as demonstrated in, for example, the holdings of the Oxford Text Archive);
- it should be useful for the production of new documents (such as this one) as well as the encoding of existing texts;
- it should be usable with a wide range of existing XML software;
- it should be a pure subset of the full TEI scheme and defined using the customization methods described in the TEI Guidelines;
- it should be as small and simple as is consistent with the other goals.

The reader may judge our success in meeting these goals for him or herself.

Although we have tried to make this document self-contained, as suits a tutorial text, the reader should be aware that it does not cover every detail of the TEI encoding scheme. All of the elements described here are fully documented in the TEI Guidelines themselves, which should be consulted for authoritative reference information on these, and on the many others which are not described here. Some basic knowledge of XML is assumed.

---

## 2 A Short Example

We begin with a short example, intended to show what happens when a passage of prose is typed into a computer by someone with little sense of the purpose of mark-up, or the potential of electronic texts. In an ideal world, such output might be generated by a very accurate optical scanner. It attempts to be faithful to the appearance of the printed text, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings and page breaks, and so forth. Where characters not available on the keyboard are needed (such as the accented letter *a* in *faàl* or the long dash), it attempts to mimic their appearance.

### CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --

'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only -- 'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'

A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear.

'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Edward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.

'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.'

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words --

'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.'

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and  
474

JANE EYRE

475

Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.

'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.'

How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspond-

ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to disentangle them;
- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to know exactly which passages are in direct speech;
- the preservation of the copy text's hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find the broken words;
- the accented letter in *faàl* and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to print the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded using the TEI Guidelines. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly.
- Apostrophes are distinguished from quotation marks; direct speech is explicitly marked.
- The accented letter and the long dash are correctly represented.
- Page divisions have been marked with an empty `<pb>` element alone.
- The lineation of the original has not been retained and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.

```
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk,
were alone
  present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house,
where
  Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —</p>
  <p>
    <q>Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</q> The housekeeper and
her
    husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any
time safely
    communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having
one's ears
    pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy
wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she
was basting
```



---

a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,  
and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but  
Mary, bending again over the roast, said only —</p>
<p>
<q>Have you, miss? Well, for sure!</q>
</p>
<p>A short time after she pursued, <q>I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know  
you were gone to church to be wed</q>; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was  
grinning from ear to ear. <q>I telled Mary how it would be,</q> he said: <q>I knew what Mr  
Edward</q> (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the  
house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) — <q>I knew what Mr Edward would do;  
and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I  
wish you joy, miss!</q> and he politely pulled his forelock.</p>
<p>
<q>Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.</q>
</p>
<p>I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen.  
In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —</p>
<p>
<q>She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.</q> And again, <q>If she  
ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's  
fair beautiful, onybody may see that.</q>
</p>
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully  
explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb n="475"/> Mary approved the step  
unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon,  
and then she would come and see me.</p>
<p>
<q>She had better not wait till then, Jane,</q> said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter  
to him; <q>if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long:  
its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.</q>
</p>
<p>How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I  
communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr  
Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very  
serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever  
since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world,  
and only mind earthly things.</p>
</div>

This particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. As a trivial example, note that in the second example, end-of-line hyphenation has been silently removed. Conceivably

Brontë (or her printer) intended the word honeymoon to appear as honey-moon on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë's text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. This is an instance of the fundamental *selectivity* of any encoding. An encoding makes explicit only those textual features of importance to the encoder. It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;
- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- detailed bibliographic information about the text's provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;
- the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
- systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
- passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

TEI-recommended ways of carrying out most of these are described in the remainder of this document. The TEI scheme as a whole also provides for an enormous range of other possibilities, of which we cite only a few:

- detailed analysis of the components of names;
- detailed meta-information providing thesaurus-style information about the text's origins or topics;
- information about the printing history or manuscript variations exhibited by a particular series of versions of the text.

For recommendations on these and many other possibilities, the full Guidelines should be consulted.

### 3 The Structure of a TEI Text

All TEI-conformant texts contain (a) a *TEI header* (marked up as a <teiHeader> element) and (b) the transcription of the text proper (marked up as a <text> element). These two elements are combined together to form a single <TEI> element, which must be declared within the TEI namespace<sup>1</sup>.

The TEI header provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of a printed text. It has up to four parts: a bibliographic description of the machine-readable text, a description of the way it has been encoded, a non-bibliographic description of the text (a *text profile*), and a revision history. The header is described in more detail in section 19. *The Electronic Title Page*.

---

<sup>1</sup>A *namespace* is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for all TEI elements is <http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0>

---

A TEI text may be *unitary* (a single work) or *composite* (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have an optional *front* or *back*. In between is the *body* of the text, which, in the case of a composite text, may consist of *groups*, each containing more groups or texts.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
    </front>
    <body>
      <!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
    </body>
    <back>
      <!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
    </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

A composite text also has an optional front and back. In between occur one or more groups of texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. A composite text will thus be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[ header information for the composite ]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!--[ front matter for the composite ]-->
    </front>
    <group>
      <text>
        <front>
          <!--[ front matter of first text ]-->
        </front>
        <body>
          <!--[ body of first text ]-->
        </body>
        <back>
          <!--[ back matter of first text ]-->
        </back>
      </text>
      <text>
        <front>
          <!--[ front matter of second text ]-->
        </front>
        <body>
          <!--[ body of second text ]-->
        </body>
        <back>
          <!--[ back matter of second text ]-->
        </back>
      </text>
      <!--[ more texts or groups of texts here ]-->
    </group>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

```
</group>
<back>
<!--[ back matter for the composite ]-->
</back>
</text>
</TEI>
```

It is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and may itself have a header:

```
<teiCorpus xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[header information for the corpus]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <teiHeader>
      <!--[header information for first text]-->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!--[first text in corpus]-->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <teiHeader>
      <!--[header information for second text]-->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!--[second text in corpus]-->
    </text>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

It is also possible to create a composite of corpora – that is, one `<teiCorpus>` element may contain many nested `<teiCorpus>` elements rather than many nested `<TEI>` elements, to any depth considered necessary.

In the remainder of this document, we discuss chiefly simple text structures. The discussion in each case consists of a short list of relevant TEI *elements* with a brief definition of each, followed by definitions for any *attributes* specific to that element, and a reference to any *classes* of which the element is a member. These references are linked to full specifications for each object, as given in the TEI *Guidelines*. In most cases, short examples are also given.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

**<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a `<teiCorpus>` element.

**<teiHeader>** (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

**<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

**<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

## 4 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a simple TEI document at the textual level consists of the following elements:

**<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

**<group>** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

**<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section 18. *Front and Back Matter*. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text.

## 4.1 Text Division Elements

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs, or these paragraphs may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. Each paragraph is tagged using the **<p>** tag. The **<div>** element is used to represent any such grouping of paragraphs.

**<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

**<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

The type attribute on the **<div>** element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division, or otherwise distinguish them. Typical values might be book, chapter, section, part, poem, song, etc. For a given project, it will usually be advisable to define and adhere to a specific list of such values.

A **<div>** element may itself contain further, nested, **<div>**s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

The **xml:id** attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section 8. *Cross References and Links*. It is often useful to provide an **xml:id** attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below. It is particularly useful to supply such identifiers if the resource concerned is to be made available over the web, since they make it much easier for other web-based applications to link directly to the corresponding parts of your text.

The **n** attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the **n** attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by **xml:id**, it does not need to be unique.

The **xml:lang** attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section 6.3. *Foreign Words or Expressions* below.

The **rend** attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section 6. *Marking Highlighted Phrases* below. As with the type attribute, a project will often find it useful to predefine the possible values for this attribute, but TEI Lite does not constrain it in anyway.

These four attributes, **xml:id**, **n**, **xml:lang**, and **rend** are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are *global attributes*. Other global attributes defined in the TEI Lite scheme are discussed in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking*.

The value of every **xml:id** attribute should be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring that this is so is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith's *Wealth of Nations* as first published consists of five books, each of which is

divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define xml:id values for this structure as follows:

```
<body>
  <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
    <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
<!-- ... -->
    <div xml:id="WN110" n="I.10" type="chapter">
      <div xml:id="WN1101" n="I.10.1" type="part">
<!-- ... -->
      </div>
      <div xml:id="WN1102" n="I.10.2" type="part">
<!-- ... -->
      </div>
    </div>
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for xml:id and n attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```
<body>
  <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="volume">
    <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="TS012" n="2" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS02" n="2" type="volume">
    <div xml:id="TS021" n="3" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="TS022" n="4" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
</body>
```

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the xml:id values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

### 4.2 Headings and Closings

Every <div> may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as End of Chapter 1 at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

**<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

**<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be necessary at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section 18.1.2. *Prefatory Matter*.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example Chapter 1) or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. `<div type="chapter" n="1">`), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy's *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```
<div xml:id="UGT1" n="Winter" type="Part">
  <div xml:id="UGT11" n="1" type="Chapter">
    <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
    <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ... </p>
  </div>
</div>
```

### 4.3 Prose, Verse and Drama

As in the Bronte example above, the paragraphs making up a textual division are tagged with the `<p>` tag. In poetic or dramatic texts different tags are needed, to represent verse lines and stanzas in the first case, or individual speeches and stage directions in the second. :

**<l>** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

**<lg>** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

**<sp>** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

**<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

**<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```
<lg n="I">
  <l>I Sing the progresse of a
    deathlesse soule,</l>
  <l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</l>
  <l>Plac'd in
    most shapes; all times before the law</l>
  <l>Yoak'd us, and when, and since, in this I
    sing.</l>
  <l>And the great world to his aged evening;</l>
  <l>From infant morne, through manly
    noone I draw.</l>
  <l>What the gold Chaldee, of silver Persian saw,</l>
  <l>Greeke brass, or
    Roman iron, is in this one;</l>
  <l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and
    stone,</l>
  <l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</l>
</lg>
```

## 4 ENCODING THE BODY

---

Note that the `<l>` element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: the original lineation of the first few lines above has not therefore been made explicit by this encoding, and may be lost. The `<lb>` element described in section 5. *Page and Line Numbers* might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

Here is the end of a famous dramatic text, in which speeches and stage directions are marked:

```
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull <emph>on</emph> your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>
    <stage>(realizing his trousers are down)</stage>.
    True</p>
</sp>
<stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Well? Shall we go?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>
<stage>They do not move.</stage>
```

Note that the `<stage>` (stage direction) element can appear either within a speech or between speeches. The `<sp>` ("speech") element contains, following an optional `<speaker>` element indicating who is speaking, either paragraphs (if the speech is in prose) or verse lines or stanzas as in the next example. In this case, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the `part` attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete :

```
<div type="Act" n="I">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div type="Scene" n="1">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stage rend="italic"> Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several
doors</stage>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
```



```

    <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Fran</speaker>
    <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Barn</speaker>
    <l part="F">He.</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Fran</speaker>
    <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
  </sp>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
</div>

```

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```

<div>
  <sp>
    <speaker>First voice</speaker>
    <lg type="stanza" part="I">
      <l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
      <l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
    </lg>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Second Voice</speaker>
    <lg part="F">
      <l>The air is cut away before.</l>
      <l>And closes from behind.</l>
    </lg>
  </sp>
<!-- ... -->
</div>

```

The <sp> element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the who attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```

<div>
  <sp who="#OPI">
    <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
    <p>I do not think I have named a single unrepresentable fish.</p>
  </sp>
  <sp who="#GRM">
    <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
    <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
  </sp>
  <sp who="#OPI">
    <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
    <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place....</p>
    <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear.</p>
  </sp>

```

```
</sp>
</div>
```

Here the who attribute values (**#OPI** etc.) are links, pointing to a list of the characters in the novel, each of which has an identifier:

```
<list>
  <head>Characters in the novel</head>
  <item xml:id="OPI">
    <name>Dr Opimian</name> : named for the famous Roman fine wine</item>
  <item xml:id="GRM">
    <name>Mr Gryll</name> : named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses'
      sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier in that
      state than
      as a man</item>
</list>
```

## 5 Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements.

**<pb/>** (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

**<lb/>** (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

**<milestone/>** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

These elements mark a single point in the text, not a span of text. The global *n* attribute should be used to supply the number of the page or line beginning at the tag.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, if only to simplify later proof-reading. It is also useful for synchronizing an encoded text with a set of page images. Recording the line breaks may be useful for similar reasons.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, specify the edition in question using the *ed* attribute, and supply as many tags as necessary. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2)

```
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully
explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475"/> Mary approved
the step
unreservedly. Diana announced that she would <pb ed="ED2" n="485"/>just give me time
to get
over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</p>
```

A special attribute break may be used to indicate whether or not this empty element is considered as a word-breaking, irrespective of any adjacent whitespace. For example, in the following encoded sample:

The **<pb>** and **<lb>** elements are special cases of the general class of *milestone* elements which mark reference points within a text. The generic **<milestone>** element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, or in general any significant change in the text not marked by an XML element. The names used for types of unit and for editions referred to by the *ed* and *unit* attributes may be chosen freely, but should be documented in the header **<refsDecl>** element

---

(see 19.2.3. *Reference and Classification Declarations*). The `<milestone>` element may be used to replace the others, or the others may be used as a set; they should not be mixed arbitrarily.

## 6 Marking Highlighted Phrases

### 6.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader's attention to some associated change.

The global `rend` attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged `<head rend="bold">`, and one in italic `<head rend="italic">`.

The values to be used for the `rend` attribute are not specified by the TEI Guidelines, since they will depend entirely on the needs of the particular project. Some typical values might include **italic**, **bold** etc. for font variations; **center**, **right** etc. for alignment; **large**, **small** etc. for size; **smallcaps**, **allcaps** etc. for type variants and so on. Several such words may be used in combination as necessary, but no formal syntax is proposed. The full TEI Guidelines provide more rigorous mechanisms, using other W3C standards such as CSS, as an alternative to the use of `rend`.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element `<hi>` may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status.

`<hi>` (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

```
<p>
  <hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further
    witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in
  consideration of the said intended marriage ...
</p>
```

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

`<emph>` (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

`<foreign>` (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

`<gloss>` identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

`<label>` contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

`<mentioned>` marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

`<term>` contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

`<title>` contains a title for any kind of work.

Some features (notably quotations and glosses) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the elements `<q>` and `<gloss>` (as discussed in the following section) should be used. If the highlighting is to be recorded, use the global `rend` attribute.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence:

On the one hand the *Nibelungenlied* is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *romans d'antiquité*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.

Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might look like this:

```
<p>On the one hand the <title>Nibelungenlied</title>
is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the
<foreign>romans
d'antiquité</foreign>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might look like this:

```
<p>On the one hand the <hi rend="italic">Nibelungenlied</hi> is associated with the
new rise of romance of twelfth-century France,
the <hi rend="italic">romans d'antiquité</hi>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes,
...</p>
```

## 6.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation. When possible, we recommend that the underlying feature be tagged, rather than the simple fact that quotation marks appear in the text, using the following elements:

**<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

**<mentioned>** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

**<soCalled>** contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

**<gloss>** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to forget Dr. Johnson's description of the
lexicographer as <q>a harmless drudge.</q>
</p>
```

To record how a quotation was printed (for example, *in-line* or set off as a *display* or *block quotation*), the *rend* attribute should be used. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the quotation and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```
<p>
  <q>Who-e debel you?</q> – he at last said –
  <q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began
  flourishing about me in the dark.
</p>
```

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes next and prev may be used, as described in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking*.

Quotations may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the who attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

```
<q who="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came
down into the office just this day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand, and
he
says:<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that I was a red-headed
man.</q>
</q>
```

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the rend attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements to distinguish direct speech, quotation, and other typical uses of quotation mark although it is not always possible and may not be considered desirable to interpret the function of quotation marks in a text. For simplicity, only <q> (which may be used for any such case) has been included in TEI Lite.

## 6.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words or phrases which are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. If the word or phrase is already tagged for some reason, the element indicated should bear a value for the global xml:lang attribute indicating the language used. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the xml:lang attribute. For example:

```
<p>John has real <foreign xml:lang="fr">savoir-faire</foreign>.</p>
<p>Have you read <title xml:lang="de">Die
Dreigroschenoper</title>?</p>
<p>
<mentioned xml:lang="fr">Savoir-faire</mentioned> is French
for know-how.
</p>
<p>The court issued a writ of <term xml:lang="la">mandamus</term>.</p>
```

As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>, <mentioned>, or <term> applies. The global xml:lang attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text.

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the xml:lang attribute, must be constructed in a particular way, and must conform to common Internet standards<sup>2</sup>, as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

<sup>2</sup>The relevant standard is *Best Current Practice 47* (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47>). The authoritative list of registered subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>.

zh	Chinese	grc	Ancient Greek
en	English	el	Greek
enm	Middle English	ja	Japanese
fr	French	la	Latin
de	German	sa	Sanskrit

## 7 Notes

All notes, whether printed as footnotes, endnotes, marginalia, or elsewhere, should be marked using the same element:

**<note>** contains a note or annotation.

Where possible, the body of a note should be inserted in the text at the point at which its identifier or mark first appears. This may not be possible for example with marginalia, which may not be anchored to an exact location. For simplicity, it may be adequate to position marginal notes before the relevant paragraph or other element. Notes may also be placed in a separate division of the text (as end-notes are, in printed books) and linked to the relevant portion of the text using their target attribute.

The n attribute may be used to supply the number or identifier of a note if this is required. The resp attribute should be used consistently to distinguish between authorial and editorial notes, if the work has both kinds.

Examples:

```
<p>Collections are ensembles of
distinct entities or objects of any sort. <note place="foot" n="1"> We explain below
why we
    use the uncommon term <mentioned>collection</mentioned> instead of the expected
    <mentioned>set</mentioned>. Our usage corresponds to the
    <mentioned>aggregate</mentioned>
    of many mathematical writings and to the sense of <mentioned>class</mentioned>
    found in
    older logical writings. </note> The elements ...</p>
```

```
<lg xml:id="RAM609">
  <note place="margin">The
    curse is finally expiated</note>
  <l>And now this spell was snapt: once more</l>
  <l>I viewed
    the ocean green,</l>
  <l>And looked far forth, yet little saw</l>
  <l>Of what had else been seen
    —</l>
</lg>
```

## 8 Cross References and Links

Explicit cross references or links from one point in a text to another in the same or another document may be encoded using the elements described in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking.*

### 8.1 Simple Cross References

A cross reference from one point within a single document to another can be encoded using either of the following elements:

**<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

**<ptr/>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

The difference between these two elements is that **<ptr>** is an empty element, simply marking a point from which a link is to be made, whereas **<ref>** may contain some text as well, typically identifying the target of the cross reference. The **<ptr>** element would be used for a cross reference which is to be indicated by some non-verbal means such as a symbol or icon, or in an electronic text by a button. It is also useful in document production systems, where the formatter can generate the correct verbal form of the cross reference.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent :

```
See especially <ref target="#SEC12">section 12 on
page 34</ref>.
```

```
See especially <ptr target="#SEC12"/>.
```

The value of the target attribute on either element may be the identifier of some other element within the current document. The passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, and must therefore be tagged as an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a **<div>** element:

```
... see especially <ptr target="#SEC12"/>. ...
<div xml:id="SEC12">
  <head>Concerning Identifiers</head>
  <!-- ... -->
</div>
```

Because the `xml:id` attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:

```
... this is
discussed in <ref target="#pspec">the paragraph on links</ref> ...
<p xml:id="pspec">Links
may be made to any kind of element ...</p>
```

Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an **<anchor>** element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the **<seg>** element may be introduced to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

**<anchor/>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

**<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

In the following (imaginary) example, **<ref>** elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

Returning to <ref target="#ABCD">the point where I dozed off</ref>, I noticed that <ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref> had been circled in red by a previous reader

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the <anchor> and <seg> elements may be used:

```
....  
<anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/> .... <seg type="target" xml:id="EFGH">  
...  
</seg> ...
```

The type attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking* below.

## 8.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the elements <ptr> and <ref> may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. However, the same elements may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the target attribute may be any valid *universal resource indicator* (URI) [Note: A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar URL used to indicate a web page, such as <http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml>].

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example <http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2>. The sharp sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an xml:id attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from <http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml>. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a special language called Xpath, also defined by the W3C. This is particularly useful where the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers and must therefore be located by some other means.

## 8.3 Special kinds of Linking

The following special purpose *linking* attributes are defined for every element in the TEI Lite scheme:

**ana** links an element with its interpretation.

**corresp** links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

**next** links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

**prev** links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The ana (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section



---

15. *Interpretation and Analysis.* For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence John loves Nancy might be encoded as follows:

```
<seg type="sentence" ana="SV0">
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VVI where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the `<seg>` element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the type attribute.

The `corresp` (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example

```
<seg xml:lang="fr" xml:id="FR1" corresp="#EN1">Jean
aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1" corresp="#FR1">John loves
Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between the show and Shirley, and between NBC and the network:

```
<p>
  <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>, which
made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on
<name xml:id="nbc">NBC</name>'s new schedule, although <seg xml:id="network" cor-
resp="#nbc">the network</seg>
says <seg xml:id="show" corresp="#shirley">the show</seg> still is being
considered.
</p>
```

The `next` and `prev` attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```
<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who-e debel you?</q> –
he at last said – <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q>
And so
saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
```

## 9 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

### 9.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark *correction*, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

**<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

**<sic>** (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark *normalization*, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

**<orig>** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

**<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

As an example, consider this extract from the quarto printing of Shakespeare's *Henry V*.

```
... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and a table of green feelds
```

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalise) the Elizabethan spellings of *a'* and *feelds* for *he* and *fields* respectively. He or she might also want to emend *table* to *babbl'd*, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearean scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

```
... for his nose was as sharp as
a pen and <reg>he</reg>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr> of green
<reg>fields</reg>
```

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

```
... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and
<orig>a</orig>
<sic>table</sic> of green
<orig>feelds</orig>
```

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the **<choice>** element.

**<choice>** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

This allows an editor to mark where alternative readings are possible:

```
... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and
<choice>
  <orig>a</orig>
  <reg>he</reg>
</choice>
<choice>
  <corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr>
  <sic>table</sic>
</choice> of green

<choice>
  <orig>feelds</orig>
  <reg>fields</reg>
</choice>
```

## 9.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

**<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

**<gap>** (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

**<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

**<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read

The following elements are provided for for simple editorial interventions.

then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second *for*, thus:

The following elements are provided for **<del resp="#LB">for</del>** simple editorial interventions.

The attribute value **#LB** on the *resp* attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a **<respStmt>** element) for the agency responsible for correcting the duplication of *for*.

If the source read

The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions.

(i.e. if the verb had been inadvertently dropped) then the corrected text might read:

The following elements **<add resp="#LB">are</add>** provided for simple editorial interventions.

These elements are also used to record authorial changes in manuscripts. A manuscript in which the author has first written How it galls me, what a galling shadow, then crossed out the word *galls* and inserted *dogs* might be encoded thus:

How it **<del hand="#DHL" type="overstrike">galls</del>**  
**<add hand="#DHL" place="supralinear">dogs</add>** me, what a galling shadow

Again, the code **#DHL** points to another location where more information about the hand concerned is to be found<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>3</sup>The full TEI provides a range of elements for encoding metadata about manuscript production and description, which are not however included in TEI Lite

Similarly, the `<unclear>` and `<gap>` elements may be used together to indicate the omission of illegible material; the following example also shows the use of `<add>` for a conjectural emendation:

```
One hundred
& twenty good regulars joined to me <unclear>
  <gap reason="indecipherable"/>
</unclear>
& instantly, would aid me signally <add hand="#ed">in?</add> an enterprise against
Wilmington.
```

The `<del>` element marks material which has been transcribed as part of the electronic text despite being marked as deleted, while `<gap>` marks the location of material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages:

```
<p> ... An example of a list appearing in a fief
ledger of <name type="place">Koldinghus</name>
  <date>1611/12</date> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of
honey.</p>
<gap>
  <desc>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</desc>
</gap>
<p>A description of the
overall structure of the account is once again ... </p>
```

Other corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) systematically omit figures and mathematics:

```
<p>At the bottom of your screen below the mode line is the <term>minibuffer</term>.
This is
the area where Emacs echoes the commands you enter and where you specify filenames
for Emacs
to find, values for search and replace, and so on. <gap reason="graphic">
  <desc>diagram of
    Emacs screen</desc>
</gap>
</p>
```

The full TEI scheme provides more precise ways of capturing different aspects of a transcription, distinguishing for example between text added or supplied by the encoder and text indicated as supplied or deleted in the source. TEI Lite does not provide different tags for these purposes.

### 9.3 Abbreviations and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

`<abbr>` (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

`<expan>` (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The `<abbr>` element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

---

We can sum up the above discussion as follows: the identity of a `<abbr>CC</abbr>` is defined by that calibration of values which motivates the elements of its `<abbr>GSP</abbr>`;

Every manufacturer of `<abbr>3GL</abbr>` or `<abbr>4GL</abbr>` languages is currently nailing on `<abbr>00P</abbr>` extensions

The type attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The `<expan>` element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character *p* with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word *per* is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

```
<expan>per</expan>
```

The expansion corresponding with an abbreviated form may not always contain the same letters as the abbreviation. Where it does, however, common editorial practice is to italicize or otherwise signal which letters have been supplied. The `<expan>` element should not be used for this purpose since its function is to indicate an expanded form, not a part of one. For example, consider the common abbreviation *wt* (for *with*) found in medieval texts. In a modern edition, an editor might wish to represent this as *with*, italicising the letters not found in the source. One simple means of achieving that would be an encoding such as the follow

```
<expan>w<hi rend="it">i</hi>t<hi rend="it">h</hi>
</expan>
```

The full TEI also provides elements `<ex>` and `<am>` for use in this situation, but these are not included in the TEI Lite schema.

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the `<choice>` element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```
<choice>
  <abbr>wt</abbr>
  <expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```

## 10 Names, Dates, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of data-like features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, numbers and dates. They also pose particular problems for many natural language processing (NLP) applications because of the variety of ways in which they may be presented within a text. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

## 10.1 Names and Referring Strings

A *referring string* is a phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

`<rs>` (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

`<name>` (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The type attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said his lady to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs>
is let at last?</q>
```

```
It being one of the principles of the <rs type="organization">Circumlocution
Office</rs> never, on any account whatsoever, to give a
straightforward answer, <rs type="person">Mr Barnacle</rs> said,
<q>Possibly.</q>
```

As the following example shows, the `<rs>` element may be used for any reference to a person, place, etc, not necessarily one in the form of a proper noun or noun phrase.

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>,</q>
said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day...
```

The `<name>` element by contrast is provided for the special case of referencing strings which consist only of proper nouns; it may be used synonymously with the `<rs>` element, or nested within it if a referring string contains a mixture of common and proper nouns.

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as *van* or *de la*, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The key attribute provides an alternative normalized identifier for the object being named, like a database record key. It may thus be useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person" key="BENM1">Mr.
  Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person" key="BENM2">his lady</rs> to him one day,
<q>have
you heard that <rs type="place" key="NETP1">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>
```

This use should be distinguished from the case of the `<reg>` (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```
<name type="person" key="WADLM1">
  <choice>
    <sic>Walter de la Mare</sic>
    <reg>de la Mare, Walter</reg>
```

```

</choice>
</name> was
born      at      <name key="Ch1" type="place">Charlton</name>,      in
<name key="KT1" type="county">Kent</name>, in 1873.

```

The `<index>` element discussed in [indexing](#) may be more appropriate if the function of the regularization is to provide a consistent index:

```

<p>
  <name type="place">Montaillou</name> is not a
large parish.      At the time of the events which led to
<name type="person">Fournier</name>'s
<index>
  <term>Benedict XII, Pope of Avignon (Jacques Fournier)</term>
</index>
investigations, the local population consisted of between 200 and 250
inhabitants.
</p>

```

Although adequate for many simple applications, these methods have two inconveniences: if the name occurs many times, then its regularised form must be repeated many times; and the burden of additional XML markup in the body of the text may be inconvenient to maintain and complex to process. For applications such as onomastics, relating to persons or places named rather than the name itself, or wherever a detailed analysis of the component parts of a name is needed, the full TEI Guidelines provide a range of other solutions.

## 10.2 Dates and Times

Tags for the more detailed encoding of times and dates include the following:

`<date>` contains a date in any format.

`<time>` contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalised versions of their values.

**att.dataable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

**@calendar** indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

**@period** supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

**@when** supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

The **when** attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. 1990, September 1990, twelvish) can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```

<date when="1980-02-21">21
Feb 1980</date>
<date when="1990">1990</date>
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
<date when="- -09">September</date>
<date when="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept 11th, 12 minutes before 9
am</date>

```

## 11 LISTS

---

Note in the last example the use of a normalized representation for the date string which includes a time: this example could thus equally well be tagged using the `<time>` element.

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth
Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of
the
Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

```
<l>especially when it's nine below zero</l>
<l>and <time when="15:00:00">three o'clock in the afternoon</time>
</l>
```

### 10.3 Numbers

Numbers can be written with either letters or digits (**twenty-one**, **xxi**, and **21**) and their presentation is language-dependent (e.g. English *5th* becomes Greek *5*.; English *123,456.78* equals French *123.456,78*). In natural-language processing or machine-translation applications, it is often helpful to distinguish them from other, more lexical parts of the text. In other applications, the ability to record a number's value in standard notation is important. The `<num>` element provides this possibility:

`<num>` (number) contains a number, written in any form.

For example:

```
<num value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">ten percent</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">10%</num>
<num type="ordinal" value="5">5th</num>
```

## 11 Lists

The element `<list>` is used to mark any kind of *list*. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

`<list>` (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

`<item>` contains one component of a list.

`<label>` contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with `<item>`. The first `<item>` may optionally be preceded by a `<head>`, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of a list may be omitted, indicated using the `n` attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the `<label>` element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
```



---

```

<item n="1">First item in list.</item>
<item n="2">Second item in list.</item>
<item n="3">Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <label>1</label>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <label>2</label>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <label>3</label>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>

```

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a *glossary list*, tagged `<list type="gloss">`. Here, each item comprises a *term* and a *gloss*, marked with `<label>` and `<item>` respectively. These correspond to the elements `<term>` and `<gloss>`, which can occur anywhere in prose text.

```

<list type="gloss">
  <head>Vocabulary</head>
  <label xml:lang="enm">nu</label>
  <item>now</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">lhude</label>
  <item>loudly</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">bloweth</label>
  <item>blooms</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">med</label>
  <item>meadow</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">wude</label>
  <item>wood</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">awe</label>
  <item>ewe</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">lhouth</label>
  <item>lows</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">sterteth</label>
  <item>bounds, frisks</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">murie</label>
  <item>merrily</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">swik</label>
  <item>cease</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">naver</label>
  <item>never</item>
</list>

```

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a *table*, for which special-purpose tagging is defined below (13. *Tables*).

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```

<list type="gloss">
  <label>EVIL</label>
  <item>
    <list type="simple">

```

```
<item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery.</item>
<item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be miserable.</item>
<item>I am divided from mankind – a solitaire; one banished from human society.</item>
</list>
</item>
<label>GOOD</label>
<item>
  <list type="simple">
    <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</item>
    <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from death...</item>
    <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenances....</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>
```

A list need not necessarily be displayed in list format. For example,

```
<p>On those remote pages it is written that animals
are divided into <list rend="run-on">
  <item n="a">those that belong to the Emperor,</item>
  <item n="b"> embalmed ones, </item>
  <item n="c"> those that are trained, </item>
  <item n="d"> suckling pigs, </item>
  <item n="e"> mermaids, </item>
  <item n="f"> fabulous ones, </item>
  <item n="g"> stray dogs, </item>
  <item n="h"> those that are included in this classification, </item>
  <item n="i"> those that tremble as if they were mad, </item>
  <item n="j"> innumerable ones, </item>
  <item n="k"> those drawn with a very fine camel's-hair brush, </item>
  <item n="l"> others, </item>
  <item n="m"> those that have just broken a flower vase, </item>
  <item n="n"> those that resemble flies from a distance.</item>
</list>
</p>
```

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the `<listBibl>` element, described in the next section.

## 12 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element `<bibl>` is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to mark at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details.

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

**<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

---

**<biblScope>** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

**<date>** contains a date in any format.

**<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

**<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

**<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

**<title>** contains a title for any kind of work.

For example, the following editorial note might be transcribed as shown:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, *Harvard Studies* 5. 88ff).

```
He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire
in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to <bibl>
  <author>Kittredge</author>,
<title>Harvard Studies</title>
  <biblScope>5. 88ff</biblScope>
</bibl>).
```

For lists of bibliographic citations, the **<listBibl>** element should be used; it may contain a series of **<bibl>** elements.

## 13 Tables

Tables represent a challenge for any text processing system, but simple tables, at least, appear in so many texts that even in the simplified TEI tag set presented here, markup for tables is necessary. The following elements are provided for this purpose:

**<table>** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

**<row>** contains one row of a table.

**<cell>** contains one cell of a table.

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the *Journal of the Plague Year* to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

```
<p>It was indeed coming on again, for the burials
that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:- <table rows="5" cols="4">
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
    <cell>64</cell>
    <cell>84</cell>
    <cell>119</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
    <cell>65</cell>
    <cell>105</cell>
    <cell>116</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</cell>
```

```
<cell>213</cell>
<cell>421</cell>
<cell>554</cell>
</row>
</table>
</p>
<p>This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and unchristian
method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ... </p>
```

## 14 Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, and may also provide a link to a digitized version of the graphic, using the following elements:

**<graphic>** indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure.

**<figure>** groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure.

**<figDesc>** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the **<figure>** element itself, in a **<head>** and one or more **<p>** elements, as also may any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a **<figDesc>** element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example;

```
<pb n="412"/>
<figure>
  <graphic url="p412fig.png"/>
</figure>
<pb n="413"/>
```

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file **p412fig.png** appears between pages 412 and 413.

The **<graphic>** element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer's ornament as a heading:

```
<head>
  <graphic
    url="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-ral02.gif"/>
</head>
```

More usually, a graphic will have at the least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the **<head>** element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure. It is also often convenient to include a brief description of the image. The **<figure>** element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic block:

---

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fessipic.png"/>
  <head>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</head>
  <figDesc>A Cruikshank
    engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading a group of revellers.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The `fac` attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simple case where only page images are available, the `fac` attribute on the `<pb>` element may be used to associate each image with an appropriate point in the text:

```
<text>
  <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->
  <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->
</text>
```

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file `page1.png` etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are provided in the full TEI Guidelines.

## 15 Interpretation and Analysis

It is often said that *all* markup is a form of interpretation or analysis. While it is certainly difficult, and may be impossible, to distinguish firmly between objective and subjective information in any universal way, it remains true that judgments concerning the latter are typically regarded as more likely to provide controversy than those concerning the former. Many scholars therefore prefer to record such interpretations only if it is possible to alert the reader that they are considered more open to dispute, than the rest of the markup. This section describes some of the elements provided by the TEI scheme to meet this need.

### 15.1 Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of canonical reference. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:

`<s>` (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

As the name suggests, the `<s>` element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking *orthographic sentences*, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
    <s n="001">Reader, I married him.</s>
    <s n="002">A quiet wedding we had:</s>
    <s n="003">he
```

```

    and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.</s>
  <s n="004">When we got back from
    church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the
dinner, and
    John cleaning the knives, and I said -</s>
</p>
<p>
  <q>
    <s n="005">Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</s>
  </q> ... </p>
</div>

```

Note that `<s>` elements cannot nest: the beginning of one `<s>` element implies that the previous one has finished. When s-units are tagged as shown above, it is advisable to tag the entire text end-to-end, so that every word in the text being analysed will be contained by exactly one `<s>` element, whose identifier can then be used to specify a unique reference for it. If the identifiers used are unique within the document, then the `xml:id` attribute might be used in preference to the `n` used in the above example.

## 15.2 Words and punctuation

Tokenization, that is, the identification of lexical or non-lexical tokens within a text, is a very common requirement for all kinds of textual analysis, and not an entirely trivial one. The decision as to whether, for example, *can't* in English or *du* in French should be treated as one word or two is not simple. Consequently it is often useful to make explicit the preferred tokenization in a marked up text. The following elements are available for this purpose:

`<w>` (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

`<pc>` (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

For example, the output from a part of speech tagger might be recorded in TEI Lite as follows:

```

<s n="1">
  <w ana="#NP0">Marley</w>
  <w ana="#VBD">was</w>
  <w ana="#AJ0">dead</w>
  <pc>:</pc>
  <w ana="#T00">to</w>
  <w ana="#VBB">begin</w>
  <w ana="#PRP">with</w>
  <pc>.</pc>
</s>

```

In this example, each word has been decorated with an automatically generated part of speech code, using the `ana` attribute discussed in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking* above. The `<w>` also provides for each word to be associated with a root form or lemma, either explicitly using the `lemma` attribute, or by reference, using the `lemmaRef` attribute, as in this example:

```

...<w ana="#VBD" lemma="be" lemmaRef="http://www.myLexicon.com/be">was</w> ...

```

## 15.3 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The `<w>` element is a specialisation of the `<seg>` element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see section 8. *Cross References and Links*); it identifies some phrase-level portion of text to which

the encoder may assign a user-specified type, as well as a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the Guidelines provide no apostrophe element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the <q> element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the who attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the <seg> element as follows:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
    <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we had: ...</p>
</div>
```

The type attribute on the <seg> element can take any value, and so can be used to record phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the header.

A <seg> element of one type (unlike the <s> element which it superficially resembles) can be nested within a <seg> element of the same or another type. This enables quite complex structures to be represented; some examples were given in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking* above. However, because it must respect the requirement that elements be properly nested and may not cut across each other, it cannot cope with the common requirement to associate an interpretation with arbitrary segments of a text which may completely ignore the document hierarchy. It also requires that the interpretation itself be represented by a single coded value in the type attribute.

Neither restriction applies to the <interp> element, which provides powerful features for the encoding of quite complex interpretive information in a relatively straightforward manner.

**<interp>** (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.

**<interpGrp>** (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

These elements allow the encoder to specify both the class of an interpretation, and the particular instance of that class which the interpretation involves. Thus, whereas with <seg> one can say simply that something is an apostrophe, with <interp> one can say that it is an instance (apostrophe) of a larger class (rhetorical figures).

Moreover, <interp> is a stand off element: it does not surround the segments of text which it describes, but instead is linked to the passage in question either by means of the ana attribute discussed in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking* above, or by means of its own inst attribute. This means that any kind of analysis can be represented, independently of the document hierarchy, as well as facilitating the grouping of analyses of a particular type together. A special purpose <interpGrp> element is provided for the latter purpose.

For example, suppose that you wish to mark such diverse aspects of a text as themes or subject matter, rhetorical figures, and the locations of individual scenes of the narrative. Different portions of our sample passage from *Jane Eyre* for example, might be associated with the rhetorical figures of apostrophe, hyperbole, and metaphor; with subject-matter references to churches, servants, cooking, postal service, and honeymoons; and with scenes located in the church, in the kitchen, and in an unspecified location (drawing room?).

These interpretations could be placed anywhere within the <text> element; it is however good practice to put them all in the same place (e.g. a separate section of the front or back matter), as in the following example:

```
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interp xml:id="fig-apos-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="figureOfSpeech">apostrophe</interp>
      <interp xml:id="fig-hyp-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="figureOfSpeech">hyperbole</interp>
      <interp xml:id="set-church-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="setting">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-church-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-serv-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference">servants</interp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

The evident redundancy of this encoding can be considerably reduced by using the `<interpGrp>` element to group together all those `<interp>` elements which share common attribute values, as follows:

```
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interpGrp type="figureOfSpeech" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="fig-apos">apostrophe</interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-hyp">hyperbole</interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-meta">metaphor</interp>
      </interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="scene-setting" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="set-church">church</interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-kitch">kitchen</interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-unspec">unspecified</interp>
      </interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="reference" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="ref-church">church</interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-serv">servants</interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-cook">cooking</interp>
      </interpGrp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

Once these interpretation elements have been defined, they can be linked with the parts of the text to which they apply in either or both of two ways. The `ana` attribute can be used on whichever element is appropriate:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p xml:id="P38.1" ana="#set-church #set-kitch">
    <s xml:id="P38.1.1" ana="#fig-apos">Reader, I
      married him.</s>
    </p>
</div>
```

Note in this example that since the paragraph has two settings (in the church and in the kitchen), the identifiers of both have been supplied.

Alternatively, the `<interp>` elements can point to all the parts of the text to which they apply, using their `inst` attribute:



---

```

<interp
  xml:id="fig-apos-2"
  type="figureOfSpeech"
  resp="#LB-MSM"
  inst="#P38.1.1">apostrophe</interp>
<interp
  xml:id="set-church-2"
  type="scene-setting"
  inst="#P38.1"
  resp="#LB-MSM">church</interp>
<interp
  xml:id="set-kitchen-2"
  type="scene-setting"
  inst="#P38.1"
  resp="#LB-MSM">kitchen</interp>

```

The `<interp>` element is not limited to any particular type of analysis. The literary analysis shown above is but one possibility; one could equally well use `<interp>` to capture a linguistic part-of-speech analysis. For example, the example sentence given in section 8.3. *Special kinds of Linking* assumes a linguistic analysis which might be represented as follows:

```

<interp xml:id="NP1" type="pos">noun
phrase, singular</interp>
<interp xml:id="VV1" type="pos">inflected verb, present-tense
singular</interp> ...

```

## 16 Technical Documentation

Although the focus of this document is on the use of the TEI schema for the encoding of existing pre-electronic documents, the same scheme may also be used for the encoding of new documents. In the preparation of new documents (such as this one), XML has much to recommend it: the document's structure can be clearly represented, and the same electronic text can be re-used for many purposes — to provide both online hypertext or browsable versions and well-formatted typeset versions from a common source for example.

To facilitate this, the TEI Lite schema includes some elements for marking features of technical documents in general, and of XML-related documents in particular.

### 16.1 Additional Elements for Technical Documents

The following elements may be used to mark particular features of technical documents:

**<eg>** (example) contains any kind of illustrative example.

**<code>** contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

**<ident>** (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. `<ident>` is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages.

**<gi>** (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.

**<att>** (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.

**<formula>** contains a mathematical or other formula.

**<val>** (value) contains a single attribute value.

The following example shows how these elements might be used to encode a passage from a tutorial introducing the Fortran programming language:

```
<p>It is traditional to introduce a language with a
program like the following: <eg> CHAR*12 GRTG GRTG = 'HELLO WORLD' PRINT *, GRTG END
</eg>
</p>
<p>This simple example first declares a variable <ident>GRTG</ident>, in the line
<code>CHAR*12 GRTG</code>, which identifies <ident>GRTG</ident> as consisting of 12
bytes
of type <ident>CHAR</ident>. To this variable, the value <val>HELLO WORLD</val> is
then
assigned.</p>
```

A formatting application, given a text like that above, can be instructed to format examples appropriately (e.g. to preserve line breaks, or to use a distinctive font). Similarly, the use of tags such as `<ident>` greatly facilitates the construction of a useful index.

The `<formula>` element should be used to enclose a mathematical or chemical formula presented within the text as a distinct item. Since formulae generally include a large variety of special typographic features not otherwise present in ordinary text, it will usually be necessary to present the body of the formula in a specialized notation. The notation used should be specified by the notation attribute, as in the following example:

```
<formula notation="tex"> \begin{math}E =
mc^2\end{math} </formula>
```

A particular problem arises when XML encoding is the subject of discussion within a technical document, itself encoded in XML. In such a document, it is clearly essential to distinguish clearly the markup occurring within examples from that marking up the document itself, and end-tags are highly likely to occur. One simple solution is to use the predefined entity reference `&lt;`; to represent each `<` character which marks the start of an XML tag within the examples. A more general solution is to mark off the whole body of each example as containing data which is not to be scanned for XML mark-up by the parser. This is achieved by enclosing it within a special XML construct called a *CDATA marked section*, as in the following example:

```
<p>A list should be encoded as
follows: <eg><![ CDATA [ <list> <item>First item in the
list</item> <item>Second item</item> </list> ]]> </eg> The
<gi>list</gi> element consists of a series of <gi>item</gi>
elements.
```

The `<list>` element used within the example above will not be regarded as forming part of the document proper, because it is embedded within a marked section (beginning with the special markup declaration `<![CDATA[`, and ending with `]]>`).

Note also the use of the `<gi>` element to tag references to element names (or *generic identifiers*) within the body of the text.

## 16.2 Generated Divisions

Most modern document production systems have the ability to generate automatically whole sections such as a table of contents or an index. The TEI Lite scheme provides an element to mark the location at which such a generated section should be placed.

`<divGen>` (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

The `<divGen>` element can be placed anywhere that a division element would be legal, as in the following example:

```
<front>
  <titlePage>
    <!-- ... -->
  </titlePage>
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
  <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</front>
<body>
  <!-- ... -->
</body>
<back>
  <div>
    <head>Appendix</head>
  <!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <divGen type="index" n="Index"/>
</back>
```

This example also demonstrates the use of the `type` attribute to distinguish the different kinds of division to be generated: in the first case a table of contents (a *toc*) and in the second an index.

When an existing index or table of contents is to be encoded (rather than one being generated) for some reason, the `<list>` element discussed in section 11. *Lists* should be used.

## 16.3 Index Generation

While production of a table of contents from a properly tagged document is generally unproblematic for an automatic processor, the production of a good quality index will often require more careful tagging. It may not be enough simply to produce a list of all parts tagged in some particular way, although extracting (for example) all occurrences of elements such as `<term>` or `<name>` will often be a good departure point for an index.

The TEI schema provides a special purpose `<index>` tag which may be used to mark both the parts of the document which should be indexed, and how the indexing should be done.

`<index>` (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

For example, the second paragraph of this section might include the following:

```
... TEI lite also provides a special purpose
<gi>index</gi> tag
<index>
  <term>indexing</term>
</index>
<index>
  <term>index (tag)</term>
  <index>
    <term>use in index generation</term>
  </index>
</index>
which may be used ...
```

The `<index>` element can also be used to provide a form of interpretive or analytic information. For example, in a study of Ovid, it might be desired to record all the poet's

references to different figures, for comparative stylistic study. In the following lines of the *Metamorphoses*, such a study would record the poet's references to Jupiter (as *deus*, *se*, and as the subject of *confiteor* [in inflectional form number 227]), to Jupiter-in-the-guise-of-a-bull (as *imago tauri fallacis* and the subject of *teneo*), and so on.<sup>4</sup>

```
<l n="3.001">iamque deus posita fallacis  
imagine tauri</l>  
<l n="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaeque rura tenebat</l>
```

This need might be met using the `<note>` element discussed in section 7. *Notes*, or with the `<interp>` element discussed in section 15. *Interpretation and Analysis*. Here we demonstrate how it might also be satisfied by using the `<index>` element.

We assume that the object is to generate more than one index: one for names of deities (called *dn*), another for onomastic references (called *on*), a third for pronominal references (called *pr*) and so forth. One way of achieving this might be as follows:

```
<l n="3.001">iamque deus posita  
fallacis imagine tauri <index indexName="dn">  
  <term>Iuppiter</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>deus</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
<index indexName="on">  
  <term>Iuppiter (taurus)</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>imago tauri  
      fallacis</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
</l>  
<l n="3.002">se confessus erat Dictaeaeque rura tenebat  
<index indexName="pr">  
  <term>Iuppiter</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>se</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
<index indexName="v">  
  <term>Iuppiter</term>  
  <index>  
    <term>confiteor  
      (v227)</term>  
  </index>  
</index>  
</l>
```

For each `<index>` element above, an entry will be generated in the appropriate index, using as headword the content of the `<term>` element it contains; the `<term>` elements nested within the secondary `<index>` element in each case provide a secondary keyword. The actual reference will be taken from the context in which the `<index>` element appears, i.e. in this case the identifier of the `<l>` element containing it.

---

<sup>4</sup>The analysis is taken, with permission, from Willard McCarty and Burton Wright, *An Analytical Onomasticon to the Metamorphoses of Ovid* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, forthcoming). Some simplifications have been undertaken.

## 16.4 Addresses

The `<address>` element is used to mark a postal address of any kind. It contains one or more `<addrLine>` elements, one for each line of the address.

`<address>` contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

`<addrLine>` (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Here is a simple example:

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
  <addrLine>U.S.A.</addrLine>
</address>
```

The individual parts of an address may be further distinguished by using the `<name>` element discussed above (section 10.1. *Names and Referring Strings*).

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <addrLine>
    <name type="city">Chicago</name>, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
  <addrLine>
    <name type="country">USA</name>
  </addrLine>
</address>
```

## 17 Character Sets, Diacritics, etc.

With the advent of XML and its adoption of Unicode as the required character set for all documents, most problems previously associated with the representation of the divers languages and writing systems of the world are greatly reduced. For those working with standard forms of the European languages in particular, almost no special action is needed: any XML editor should enable you to input accented letters or other non-ASCII characters directly, and they should be stored in the resulting file in a way which is transferable directly between different systems.

There are two important exceptions: the characters `&` and `<` may not be entered directly in an XML document, since they have a special significance as initiating markup. They must always be represented as *entity references*, like this: `&amp;` or `&lt;`;. Other characters may also be represented by means of entity reference where necessary, for example to retain compatibility with a pre-Unicode processing system.

## 18 Front and Back Matter

### 18.1 Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information. P5 provides a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

#### 18.1.1 Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element `<titlePage>`. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

**<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

**<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

**<titlePart>** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

**<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

**<docAuthor>** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

**<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

**<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

**<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

**<epigraph>** contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the `rend` attribute when necessary, as described above. Very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not as yet provided for by the Guidelines. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the `xml:lang` attribute or the `<foreign>` element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the `<name>` element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:

```
<titlePage rend="Roman">
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main"> PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV <hi>BOOKS</hi>.
  </titlePart>
    <titlePart> To which is added <title>SAMSON AGONISTES</title>. </titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline>The Author <docAuthor>JOHN MILTON</docAuthor>
  </byline>
  <docImprint>
    <name>LONDON</name>, Printed by <name>J.M.</name> for <name>John Starkey</name>
    at the <name>Mitre</name> in <name>Fleetstreet</name>, near
    <name>Temple-Bar.</name>
  </docImprint>
  <docDate>MDCLXXI</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main"> Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman
      Conquest;</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="sub">with anecdotes of their courts. </titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <titlePart>Now first published from Official Records and other authentic documents
    private
    as well as public.</titlePart>
  <docEdition>New edition, with corrections and additions</docEdition>
```

```
<byline>By <docAuthor>Agnes Strickland</docAuthor>
</byline>
<epigraph>
  <q>The treasures of antiquity laid up in old historic rolls, I opened.</q>
  <bibl>BEAUMONT</bibl>
</epigraph>
<docImprint>Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea</docImprint>
<docDate>1860.</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

As elsewhere, the `ref` attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

```
<byline>By <docAuthor>
  <name
    ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes_Strickland">Agnes
    Strickland</name>
  </docAuthor>
</byline>
```

### 18.1.2 Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using `<div>` elements; the following suggested values for the `type` attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

**preface** A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text

**dedication** A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.

**abstract** A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose

**ack** A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text

**contents** A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The `<list>` element should be used to mark its structure.

**frontispiece** A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the `type` attribute.

Like any text division, those in front matter may contain low level structural or non-structural elements as described elsewhere. They will generally begin with a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the `<head>` element. Epistles will contain the following additional elements:

**<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

**<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

**<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

**<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

**<argument>** contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

**<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

**<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

**<closer>** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Epistles which appear elsewhere in a text will, of course, contain these same elements.

As an example, the dedication at the start of Milton's *Comus* should be marked up as follows:

```
<div type="dedication">
  <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir
  apparent
    to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
  <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
  <p>THis <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv'd its first occasion of Birth from your Self,
  and
    others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your attendant
  <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
    <signed>
      <name>H. LAWES.</name>
    </signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

## 18.2 Back Matter

### 18.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the **<back>** element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as **<div>** elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the type attribute:

**appendix** An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

**glossary** A list of terms associated with definition texts ('glosses'): this should be encoded as a «list type="gloss"» element

**notes** A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

**bibliogr** A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a **<listBibl>**

**index** Any form of pre-existing index to the work (An index may also be generated for a document by using the **<index>** element described above).

**colophon** A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.



---

## 19 The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element `<teiHeader>` and has four major parts:

`<fileDesc>` (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

`<encodingDesc>` (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

`<profileDesc>` (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

`<revisionDesc>` (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the type attribute indicates the type of header. `<teiHeader type="corpus">` introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more `<p>`s. Others are grouped:

- Elements whose names end in *Stmt* (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
- Elements whose names end in *Decl* (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
- Elements whose names end in *Desc* (for description) contain a prose description.

### 19.1 The File Description

The `<fileDesc>` element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

`<titleStmt>` (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.

`<editionStmt>` (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

`<extent>` describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

`<publicationStmt>` (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

`<seriesStmt>` (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

`<notesStmt>` (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

`<sourceDesc>` (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal header has the following structure:

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <!-- bibliographic description of the digital resource -->
    </titleStmt>
```

```
<publicationStmt>
<!-- information about how the resource is distributed -->
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
<!-- information about the sources from which the digital resource is derived -->
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

### 19.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the <titleStmt>:

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<sponsor> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

<funder> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital one will obviously be similar. However, it is important to distinguish the title of the computer file from that of the source text, for example:

```
[title of source]: a machine readable transcription [title of
source]: electronic edition A machine readable version of: [title of source]
```

The <respStmt> element contains the following subcomponents:

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
<title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe: a machine readable transcription</title>
<author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
<respStmt>
<resp>compiled by</resp>
<name>James D. Benson</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

### 19.1.2 The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where *edition* is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="U2">Third
    draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
  </edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

### 19.1.3 The Extent Statement

The **<extent>** statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```
<extent>4532
bytes</extent>
```

### 19.1.4 The Publication Statement

The **<publicationStmt>** is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

**<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

**<distributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

**<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor.

At least one of these three elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

**<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

**<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

**<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.

**<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.

**<date>** contains a date in any format.

Example:

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media Centre</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Victoria, BC</pubPlace>
```

```
<date>2011</date>
<availability status="restricted">
  <licence
    target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/"> Distributed under a
    Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License </licence>
  </availability>
</publicationStmt>
```

### 19.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The `<seriesStmt>` element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain `<title>`, `<idno>`, or `<respStmt>` elements.

The `<notesStmt>`, if used, contains one or more `<note>` elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

### 19.1.6 The Source Description

The `<sourceDesc>` is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

`<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

`<listBibl>` (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton
    Facsimile,
    1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <author>CNN Network News</author>
    <title>News headlines</title>
    <date>12 Jun
      1989</date>
  </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

## 19.2 The Encoding Description

The `<encodingDesc>` element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain elements from the following list:

`<projectDesc>` (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

`<samplingDecl>` (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

`<editorialDecl>` (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

**<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

**<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

### 19.2.1 Project and Sampling Descriptions

Examples of **<projectDesc>** and **<samplingDesc>**:

```
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Texts collected for
      use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.
    </p>
  </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>
```

```
<encodingDesc>
  <samplingDecl>
    <p>Samples of
      2000 words taken from the beginning of the text</p>
  </samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```

### 19.2.2 Editorial Declarations

The **<editorialDecl>** contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph.

**correction** how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

**normalization** the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

**quotation** what has been done with quotation marks in the original – have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

**hyphenation** what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original – have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

**segmentation** how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

**interpretation** what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

```
<editorialDecl>
  <p>The part of
    speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not been
    checked.</p>
  <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling
    checker.</p>
  <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th
    Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</editorialDecl>
```

## 19.2.3 Reference and Classification Declarations

The `<refsDecl>` element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>The <att>n</att>
    attribute on each <gi>div</gi> contains the canonical reference for each division
in the
    form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and yyy is the section
number in
    arabic.</p>
  <p>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50.
</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The `<classDecl>` element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes used by other parts of the header. At least one such scheme must be provided, encoded using the following elements:

`<taxonomy>` defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

`<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

`<category>` contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

UNKNOWN ELEMENT `catDesc`

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings
    </bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="B.A">
    <catDesc>Press
      Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="B.A1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
```

```

</category>
<category xml:id="B.A5">
  <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.A6">
  <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="B.D">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="B.D1">
    <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.D2">
    <catDesc>Periodicals and
      tracts</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>

```

Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the `<catRef>` element within the `<textClass>` element, as described in the next section below.

### 19.3 The Profile Description

The `<profileDesc>` element enables information characterizing various descriptive aspects of a text to be recorded within a single framework. It has three optional components:

**<creation>** contains information about the creation of a text.

**<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

**<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The `<creation>` element is useful for documenting where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there.

Example:

```

<creation>
  <date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
  <name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>

```

The `<langUsage>` element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain `<language>` elements to document each particular language used:

**<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

For example, a text containing predominantly text in French as spoken in Quebec, but also smaller amounts of British and Canadian English might be documented as follows:

```

<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>

```

The `<textClass>` element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the `<classDecl>` element, or by reference to

some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

**<classCode>** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

**<catRef/>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

**<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the **<classCode>** element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the **<taxonomy>** element discussed in the preceding subsection, the **<catRef>** element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as **Press reportage - Sunday** and also as **Religion** might be documented as follows:

```
<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D">410</catRef>
```

The element **<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. As usual, the attribute **scheme** identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a **<taxonomy>** element as above :

```
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <list>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Data processing.</item>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Theory etc.</item>
      <item>English language -- Style -- Data processing.</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

## 19.4 The Revision Description

The **<revisionDesc>** element provides a change log in which each change made to a text may be recorded. The log may be recorded as a sequence of **<change>** elements each of which contains a brief description of the change. The attributes **when** and **who** may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the agency responsible for it.

Example:

```
<revisionDesc>
  <change when="1991-03-06" who="#EMB">File format updated</change>
  <change when="1990-05-25" who="#EMB">Stuart's corrections entered</change>
</revisionDesc>
```



In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such *version control systems*, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI Header of a file automatically.



## List of Elements Described

The TEI Lite schema is a pure subset of TEI P5. In the following list of elements and classes used, some information, notably the examples, derives from the canonical definition for the element in TEI P5 and may therefore refer to elements or attributes not provided by TEI Lite. Note however that only the elements listed here are available within the TEI Lite schema. These specifications also refer to many attributes which although available in TEI Lite are not discussed in this tutorial for lack of space.

## Elements

**<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element. [4. 15.1.]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*core:* teiCorpus

*May contain*

*header:* teiHeader

*textstructure:* text

*Declaration*

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )
}
```

*Schematron* <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

*Schematron* <s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

*Example*

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
          version using a name space.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

```
</text>
</TEI>
```

*Note* This element is required.

---

**<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*) att.typed (*type*, *@subtype*)

**@type** allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Note* The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language  
licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element abbr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```

<choice>
  <expansion>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expansion>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>

```

*Example*

```

<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expansion>senatus populusque romanorum</expansion>
</choice>

```

*Note* The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

---

**<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [3.4.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) att.transcriptional ( @hand, @status, @cause, @seq ) ( att.editLike ( @evidence, @source, @instant ) ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence ) ) ( att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.placement ( @place ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb  
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

The story I am going to relate is true as to  
its main facts, and as to the consequences <add place="above">of  
these facts</add> from which this tale takes its title.

*Note* The <add> element should not be used for additions made by editors or encoders.  
In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element should be used.

---

**<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. 2.2.4.  
3.11.2.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking  
(@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.addrPart

*Contained by*

*core:* address

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

<address>  
<addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>

```

<addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
<addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
<addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>

```

*Note* Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the `model.addrPart` class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an `<address>` element directly but may be wrapped within an `<addrLine>` if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

**<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. 2.2.4. 3.11.2.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

*Member of* `model.addressLike` `model.publicationStmntPart`

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmnt sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* addrLine gap index lb milestone name note pb rs

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*Declaration*

```

element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}

```

*Example*

```

<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>

```

*Example*

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

*Note* This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element `<addrLine>` may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the `model.addrPart` class, such as `<street>`, `<postCode>` etc.

---

**<anchor/>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. 16.4. ]

*Module linking* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

*Member of* `model.milestoneLike`

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig  
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }
---

*Example*

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

*Note* On this element, the global `xml:id` attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.



**<argument>** contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. 4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* back body div front group opener titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* bibl cit desc gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* eg

*Declaration*

```
element argument
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<argument>
  <p>Monte Video – Maldonado – Excursion
    to R Polanco – Lazo and Bolas – Partridges –
    Absence of Trees – Deer – Capybara, or River Hog –
    Tucutuco – Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits – Tyrant
    Flycatcher – Mocking-bird – Carrion Hawks –
    Tubes formed by Lightning – House struck</p>
</argument>
```

*Note* Often contains either a list or a paragraph

---

**<att>** (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text. [22. ]

*Module* tagdocs — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*@scheme* supplies an identifier for the scheme in which this name is defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **TEI** (text encoding initiative) this attribute is part of the TEI scheme. [Default]

**DBK** (docbook) this attribute is part of the Docbook scheme.

**XX** (unknown) this attribute is part of an unknown scheme.

*Member of* model.phrase.xml

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign  
gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref  
reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language  
licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```
element att
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.enumerated }?,
  data.name}
```

*Example*

```
<p>The TEI defines six <soCalled>global</soCalled> attributes; their names
are
<att>xml:id</att>, <att>rend</att>, <att>xml:lang</att>, <att>n</att>,
<att>xml:space</att>,
and <att>xml:base</att>; <att scheme="XX">style</att> is not among
them.</p>
```

*Note* A namespace prefix may be used in order to specify the scheme as an alternative to specifying it via the scheme attribute: it takes precedence

---

**<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))  
att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* editionStmt titleStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
```

*Note* Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

---

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4.]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.publicationStmtPart

*Contained by*

*header:* publicationStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

*Example*

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

---

**<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

*@status* supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **free** the text is freely available.

**unknown** the status of the text is unknown. [Default]

**restricted** the text is not freely available.

*Member of* model.publicationStmtPart

*Contained by*

*header:* publicationStmt

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* licence

*Declaration*

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

*Example*

```

<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining
a copy
      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"),
to deal
      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the
rights
      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or
sell
      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
    <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be
included in
      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
    <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
EXPRESS OR
      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANTABILITY,
      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT
SHALL THE
      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE,
ARISING FROM,
      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS
IN
      THE SOFTWARE.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>

```

*Note* A consistent format should be adopted

**<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.  
[4.7. 4.]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking  
(@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))  
att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* text

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* divGen gap head index lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*Declaration*

element back
--------------

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}
```

*Example*

```
<back>
<div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
    Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
      10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>
    <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J.
NEWBERY, at the
    Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c.
      2s. 6d</item>
    <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
</back>
```

*Note* The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

*Member of* model.biblLike model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence sourceDesc taxonomy

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure

*header:* distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* code ident

*Declaration*

```

element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.highlighted    | model.pPart.data    | model.pPart.edit
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in
English (Yale,
1990)</bibl>

```

*Example*

```

<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In

```

```
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.  
<publisher>OUP</publisher>  
  <date>1968</date>.  
</bibl>
```

*Example*

```
<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter" xml:id="carlin_2003">  
  <author>  
    <name>  
      <surname>Carlin</surname>  
      (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>  
    </author>,  
  <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last  
    congrès</title> dans  
  <bibl type="monogr">  
    <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.  
      Tobin</title>, éd.  
  <editor>  
    <name>  
      <forename>Claire</forename>  
      <surname>Carlin</surname>  
    </name>  
  </editor> et  
  <editor>  
    <name>  
      <forename>Kathleen</forename>  
      <surname>Wine</surname>  
    </name>  
  </editor>,  
  <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,  
  <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,  
  <date when="2003">2003</date>.  
</bibl>  
</bibl>
```

*Note* Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

---

**<biblScope>** (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.11.2.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (*att.global linking* (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (*att.global analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global facs* (*@facs*))

*@unit* identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

**issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

**pp** (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

**ll** (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.



**chap** (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

**part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

**@type** identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Suggested values include:* **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

**issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

**pp** (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

**ll** (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.

**chap** (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

**part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

**@from** specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.word`

**@to** specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.word`

*Member of* model.imprintPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* seriesStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute unit
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute type
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute from { data.word }?,

```

attribute to { data.word }?, macro.phraseSeq}
--

*Example*

```
<biblScope>pp 12-34</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="pp" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="vol">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="pp">12</biblScope>
```

---

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))  
att.declaring ( @decls)

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* text

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* bibl cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q  
sp stage

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* eg

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener  
postscript salute signed trailer

*Declaration*

<pre>element body {   att.global.attributes,   att.declaring.attributes,   (     model.global*,     ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global   model.divTop )* )?,     ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )?,     (       ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+         ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+         (           ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,           (             ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+               ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global   model.divGenLike )* )+           )?         )       ),     ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*   ) }</pre>
---

*Example*

```

<body>
  <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
  <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
  <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
  <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
  <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
  <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
  <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
  <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
  <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
  <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>

```

**<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. 4.5. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* back body div front group opener titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*textstructure:* docAuthor

*Declaration*

```

element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>

```

*Example*

```

<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>

```

*Example*

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

*Example*

```
<byline>BY  
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>  
Master of Arts,  
(Sontimes)  
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

*Note* The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the `<docAuthor>` element.

---

**<catRef/>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.pointing` (`@targetLang`, `@target`, `@evaluate`)

`@scheme` identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Values* May supply the identifier of the associated `<taxonomy>` element.

*Member of* ~~Group~~ *contained by*

*header:* textClass

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element catRef  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.pointing.attributes,  
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,  
  empty  
}
```

*Example*

```
<catRef target="#news #prov #sales2"/>  
<taxonomy>  
  <category xml:id="news">  
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>  
  </category>  
  <category xml:id="prov">  
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>  
  </category>  
  <category xml:id="sales2">  
    <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
```

```

</category>
</taxonomy>

```

*Note* The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared

**<category>** contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs ))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* category taxonomy

*May contain*

*core:* desc gloss

*header:* category

*Declaration*

```

element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | model.glossLike )* ), category* )
}

```

*Example*

```

<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>

```

*Example*

```

<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>

```

*Example*

```

<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="LPROSE">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
    <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
    <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>

```

```
</category>
<category xml:id="LDRAMA">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
```

---

**<cell>** contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1. ]

*Module* figures — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.tableDecoration ( @role, @rows, @cols)

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*figures:* row

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
    and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

---

**<change>** documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.5. 2.4.1. ]

*Module* header — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.ascribed ( @who) att.dataable ( @calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c ( @when)) att.docStatus ( @status) att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

**@target** points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by  
whitespace

*Member of* `Contained by`

*header:* revisionDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p  
pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element change
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<titleStmt>
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
  <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter
23</change>
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter
2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section
3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>

```

*Example*

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly
        using green ink</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as

```

```
        supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
</creation>
</profileDesc>
```

*Note* The who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The status attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

---

**<choice>** groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.linePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language  
licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

*linking:* seg

*Declaration*

```
element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )* }
```

*Example* An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
    <sic>1724</sic>
    <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
    <orig>favour</orig>
    <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>
```

*Note* Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive.



However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest. Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. should be preferred.

**<cit>** (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. 4.3.1. 9.3.5.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.entryPart.top model.quoteLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* bibl cit gap index lb milestone note pb ptr q ref

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* eg

*Declaration*

```

element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.qLike      | model.egLike      | model.biblLike      | model.ptrLike      | model.glc
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
  as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>

```

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
    <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
    <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
      <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
    </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

---

**<classCode>** (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*@scheme* identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Values* may point to a local definition, for example in a <taxonomy> element, or more usually to some external location where the scheme is fully defined.

*Member of* Confined by

*header:* textClass

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element classCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer },
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

**<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. 2.3. ]

*Module* header — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*header:* taxonomy

*Declaration*

```
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

*Example*

```
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government --
      Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

**<closer>** groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. 4.2. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.divBottomPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div front group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*textstructure:* dateline salute signed

*Declaration*

```

element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline      | salute      | model.phrase      | model.glob
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<div type="letter">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>

```

*Example*

```

<div type="chapter">
  <p> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>

```

---

**<code>** contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

*Module* tagdocs — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

**@lang** (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.word

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan  
foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language  
licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```
element code { att.global.attributes, attribute lang { data.word }?, text }
```

*Example*

```
<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

**<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.4.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element corr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

I don't know,  
Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <corr>can we</corr> prove  
or disprove anyone's theories?

*Example* It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now –  
how <choice>  
  <sic>we can</sic>  
  <corr>can we</corr>  
</choice> prove or  
disprove anyone's theories?

---

**<creation>** contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. 2.4. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when))

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*header:* idno

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element creation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange ) *
}
```

*Example*

```
<creation>
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

*Example*

```
<creation>
  <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

*Note* The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be

confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

**<date>** contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. 2.2.4. 2.5. 3.11.2.3. 15.2.3. 13.3.6. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) att.dateable ( @calendar, @period ) ( att.dateable.w3c ( @when ) ) att.editLike ( @evidence, @source, @instant ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence ) ) ) ( att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element date
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example*

<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>

*Example*

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven
of the Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

*Example*

```
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

---

**<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.divWrapper

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* body closer div group opener

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

element dateline { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
---

*Example*

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

*Example*

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```



**<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [3.4.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.transcriptional ( @hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike ( @evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>

```

*Example*

```
<del rend="overstrike">
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/>
</del>

```

*Note* Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see 21. ). This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way. There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del>, which is a statement of the the or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text, and elements such as <gap> or <unclear> which signal the editor's decision to omit or inability to read the text remaining. See further sections 11.3.1.7. and, for the close association of the <del> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements (the latter three tags available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources), 11.3.3.2. The <del> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either <corr>, <surplus> or <gap> should be used.

---

**<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is appropriate. [22.4.4. 22.4.5. 22.4.6. 22.4.7. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.translatable (@versionDate)

*Member of* model.descLike model.labelLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item l lg note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* category change licence taxonomy

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl mentioned name num ptr q ref rs soCalled stage term time title

*figures:* table

*header:* idno

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

<pre>element desc {   att.global.attributes,</pre>
--

```
att.translatable.attributes,
macro.limitedContent}
```

*Example*

```
<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an
element, attribute,
attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>
```

*Note* TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

**<istributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4. ]

*Module* header — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* publicationStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element distributor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

**<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.divLike ( @org, @sample) (att.fragmentable ( @part)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype) att.declaring ( @decls)

*Member of* model.divLike

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back body div front

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* bibl cit desc divGen gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q  
sp stage

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* eg

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener  
postscript salute signed trailer

*Declaration*

```
element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
            ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
            ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*)
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*)
    )?
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,
to repress all
    exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div n="1" type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
greatest
      happiness of the greatest number....</p>
      <div n="1.1" type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
        <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to
be attached to
        authority ... </p>
      </div>
      <div n="1.2" type="section">
        <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
        <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when... </p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</body>
```

**<divGen>** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [3.8.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

**@type** specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **index** an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

**toc** a table of contents

**figlist** a list of figures

**tablist** a list of tables

*Note* Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

*Member of* model.divGenLike model.frontPart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back body div front

*May contain*

*core:* head

*Declaration*

```

element divGen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  model.headLike*
}

```

*Example* One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the indexName attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```

<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
    <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
  </div1>
</back>

```

*Example* Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front>
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p> ... </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

*Note* This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

---

**<docAuthor>** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* back body byline div front group titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
      Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

*Note* The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the **<docAuthor>** element may be used whether the **<byline>** element is used or not.

---

**<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page. [4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

**@when** gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.temporal.w3c**

*Values* a date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2:*

*Datatypes Second Edition*

*Note* For simple dates, the when attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in the form (YYYY-MM-DD) specified by *XML Schema Part 2*.

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* back body div docImprint front group titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when { data.temporal.w3c }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

*Note* Cf. the general **<date>** element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

---

**<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

<pre>element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }</pre>
--

*Example*

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

*Note* Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

**<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*textstructure:* docDate

*Declaration*



```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace      | docDate      | publisher      | model.
```

*Example*

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

*Note* Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

---

**<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* gap index lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* titlePart

*Declaration*

```
element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
```

```
( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

---

**<edition>** (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2. ]*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))*Member of* model.biblPart*Contained by**core:* bibl*header:* editionStmt*May contain**analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear*figures:* figure formula*header:* idno*linking:* anchor seg*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val*Declaration*

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

---

**<editionStmt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. 2.2. ]*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))*Member of**Contained by**header:* fileDesc*May contain**core:* author editor p respStmt

*header:* edition funder principal sponsor

*Declaration*

```
element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

*Example*

```
<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
</p>
</editionStmt>
```

---

**<editor>** contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) att.naming ( @role, @nymRef ) (att.canonical ( @key, @ref ))

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

*Note* A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

---

**<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. 2.3. 15.3.2. ]

*Module* header — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*Declaration*

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

*Example*

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization>
    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
    </p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all">
    <p>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing
      quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

---

**<eg>** (example) contains any kind of illustrative example. [22.4.4. 22.4.5. ]

*Module* tagdocs — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.egLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

<code>element eg { att.global.attributes, text }</code>
---

*Example*

```
<p>The
<gi>term</gi> element is declared using the following syntax:
<eg><![CDATA[<![ELEMENT term (%phrase.content;)>]]</eg>
</p>
```

*Note* If the example contains material in XML markup, either it must be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters. If the example contains well-formed XML, it should be marked using the more specific `<egXML>` element.

---

**<emph>** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

<code>element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }</code>
--

*Example*

You took the car and did **<emph>what</emph>?!!**

*Example*

```
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.  
<q>  
  <emph>What  
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>  
</q>
```

---

**<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. 2.1.1. ]

*Module* header — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.teiHeaderPart

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*core:* p

*header:* classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl

*Declaration*

```
element encodingDesc  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  ( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )  
}
```

*Example*

```
<encodingDesc>  
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All  
    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No  
    formatting or layout information preserved.</p>  
</encodingDesc>
```

---

**<epigraph>** contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. 4.2. 4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* back body div front group opener titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* bibl cit desc gap index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* eg

*Declaration*

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

*Example*

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

**<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language  
licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element expan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

*Example*

```
<expan xml:lang="la">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>
```

*Note* The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the **transcr** module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

---

**<extent>** describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. 2.2. 3.11.2.3. 10.7.1. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* fileDesc

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*



```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

**<figDesc>** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4. ]

*Module* figures — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*figures:* figure

*May contain*

*core:* abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl mentioned name num ptr q ref rs soCalled stage term time title

*figures:* table

*header:* idno

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

*Example*

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

*Note* This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

**<figure>** groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4. ]

*Module* figures — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.global

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p  
pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* bibl cit desc gap graphic head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q  
sp stage

*figures:* figDesc figure formula table

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* eg

*textstructure:* closer postscript signed trailer

*Declaration*

```
element figure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike | model.common | figDesc | model.graphicLike | model.glo
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<figure>
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png" scale="0.5"/>
</figure>
```

---

**<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic  
file. [2.2. 2.1.1. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking  
(@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*header:* editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

*Declaration*

```

element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    sourceDesc+
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>

```

*Note* The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

---

**<foreign>** (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. ]

*Module* core — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

*Example*

```
This is  
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis  
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

*Note* The global xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

---

**<formula>** contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. ]

*Module* figures — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*@notation* names the notation used for the content of the element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

data.enumerated
-----------------

*Member of* model.graphicLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss  
head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs  
sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figure formula table

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* graphic hi

*figures:* formula

*Declaration*

```
element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute notation { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )*
```

*Example*

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
```

*Example*

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi>
</formula>
```

*Example*

```
<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>m</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mn>2</m:mn>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>
```

---

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. 4. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) att.declaring ( @decls )

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* text

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* divGen gap head index lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint  
docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*Declaration*

```
element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}
```

*Example*

```
<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
    <q xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat
      illa: <q xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>
    </quote>
  </epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
    </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

*Example*

```
<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently.
    ...</p>
  </div>
</front>
```

---

**<funder>** (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* editionStmt titleStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element funder { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

*Example*

```
<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal
agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of
Canada</funder>
```

*Note* Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors*, who provide intellectual support and authority.

**<gap>** (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3. ]

*Module core* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) ) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

**@reason** gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

*Values* any short indication of the reason for the omission.

**@hand** in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, signifies the hand which made the deletion.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Values* must point to a hand identifier typically but not necessarily declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1. ).

**@agent** In the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

**mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

**smoke** damage results from smoke

*Member of* model.global.edit

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p  
pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/>
```

*Example*

```
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"/>
```

*Example*

```
<del>
  <gap
    atLeast="4"
    atMost="8"
    unit="chars"
```



```
reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

*Example*

```
<gap extent="unknown" unit="lines" reason="lost"/>
```

*Note* The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

<gi> (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element. [22. 22.4.4. ]

*Module* tagdocs — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*@scheme* supplies the name of the scheme in which this name is defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **TEI** (text encoding initiative) this element is part of the TEI scheme. [Default]

**DBK** (docbook) this element is part of the Docbook scheme.

**XX** (unknown) this element is part of an unknown scheme.

**Schematron** this element is from Schematron.

**HTML** this element is from the HTML scheme.

*Member of* model.phrase.xml

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```
element gi
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
attribute scheme { data.enumerated }?,
data.name}
```

*Example*

```
<p>The <gi>xhtml:li</gi> element is roughly analogous to the <gi>item</gi>
element, as is the
<gi scheme="DBK">listItem</gi> element.</p>
```

This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the schema attribute as alternative ways of indicating that the gi in question is not a TEI element name: in practice only one method should be adopted.

---

**<gloss>** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.3.4. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declaring (@decls) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

*Member of* model.emphLike model.glossLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority category change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor taxonomy

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element gloss
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
```

```
att.cReferencing.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
We may define <term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>
as
<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed
through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
addresser, and the
fiction.</gloss>
```

*Note* The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

**<graphic>** indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. [3.9. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.media (@width, @height, @scale) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls)

*Member of* model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figure formula table

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```
element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}
```

*Example*

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

*Note* The mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the url attribute.

---

**<group>** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. 4.3.1. 15.1. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.declaring ( @decls)

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* group text

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* gap head index lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener postscript salute signed text trailer

*Declaration*

```
element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
    model.divBottom*
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<text>
<front/>
<group>
  <text/>
  <text/>
</group>
</text>
```

---

**<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.headLike model.pLike.front

*Contained by*

*core:* divGen lg list listBibl

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* argument back body div front group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb  
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | lg      | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | model.inter    | model.lLike    | model.
  )
}

```

*Example* The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```

<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
  Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
      years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
  </div2>
</div1>

```

*Example* The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```

With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list type="simple">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>

```

```
<item>again</item>
<item/>
</list>
```

*Note* The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

---

**<hi>** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.hiLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc formula

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

element hi { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
---

*Example*

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

**<ident>** (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. <ident> is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages. [22.1.1. ]

*Module* tagdocs — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

```
element ident { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, text }
```

*Example*

```
<ident type="namespace">http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples</ident>
```

*Note* In running prose, this element may be used for any kind of identifier in any formal language. It should not be used for element and attribute names in XML, for which the special elements <gi> and <att> are provided.

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [2.2.4. 2.2.5. 3.11.2.3. ]

*Module* header — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

**@type** categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Member of* model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder idno  
language licence principal publicationStmt seriesStmt sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*header:* idno

*Declaration*

```
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

*Example*

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">http://dx.doi.org/10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URL">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as **#sym**.

*Note* <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web.

---

**<index>** (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [3.8.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs ))  
att.spanning ( @spanTo )

**@indexName** a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.name

*Values* an application-specific name, consisting of Unicode characters only.



*Note* This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
 expan foreign gloss head hi index item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig  
 p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
 unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
 principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
 docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
 text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* index term

*Declaration*

```

element index
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  attribute indexName { data.name }?,
  ( term, index? ) *
}

```

*Example*

```

David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura
<index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.

```

**<interp>** (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3. ]

*Module analysis* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))  
 att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* interpGrp s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
 expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p

pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```
element interp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.descLike | model.certLike ) *
}
```

*Example*

```
<interp type="structuralunit" xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>
```

*Note* Generally, each <interp> element carries an xml:id attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an <interp> with any textual element through its ana attribute. Alternatively (or, in addition) an <interp> may carry an inst attribute which points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the <interp> applies.

---

**<interpGrp>** (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3. ]

*Module analysis* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))  
att.interpLike (@type, @inst) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

*Member of* model.global.meta

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p  
pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp

*core:* desc

*Declaration*

```
element interpGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  ( model.descLike*, interp+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<interpGrp resp="#TMA" type="structuralunit">
  <desc>basic structural organization</desc>
  <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
<bibl xml:id="TMA"/>
```

*Note* Any number of <interp> elements.

---

**<item>** contains one component of a list. [3.7. 2.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking  
( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs ))  
att.sortable ( @sortKey )

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*core:* list

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p  
pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

`att.sortable.attributes,  
macro.specialPara}`

*Example*

```
<list type="ordered">  
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>  
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>  
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the  
Church revenues.</item>  
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>  
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>  
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>  
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>  
  <item> ...</item>  
</list>
```

*Note* May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global `n` attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not `n`.

---

**<keywords>** contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

**@scheme** identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Values* may point to a local definition, for example in a `<taxonomy>` element, or more usually to some external location where the scheme is fully defined.

*Member of* ~~Contained by~~

*header:* textClass

*May contain*

*core:* list term

*Declaration*

```
element keywords  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,  
  ( term+ | list )  
}
```

*Example*

```
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
```

*Example*

```
<keywords>
  <term>Fermented beverages</term>
  <term>Central Andes</term>
  <term>Schinus molle</term>
  <term>Molle beer</term>
  <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
  <term>Ethnography</term>
  <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

*Note* Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the scheme attribute.

---

<1> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.fragmentable (@part)

*Member of* model.ILike

*Contained by*

*core:* head item lg note q sp stage

*figures:* figure

*header:* change licence

*textstructure:* argument body div epigraph postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```
<l met="-/-/-/-/-/" part="Y"/>
```

---

**<label>** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place)

*Member of* model.labelLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list note orig p q ref reg sic stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example* Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global xml:lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
```

```

<item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
<label>wude</label>
<item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
<label>awe</label>
<item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
<label>lhouth</label>
<item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
<label>sterteth</label>
<item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
  <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
  <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
</cit>
</item>
<label>verteth</label>
<item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
<label>murie</label>
<item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
<label>swik</label>
<item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
<label>naver</label>
<item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>

```

*Example* Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the n attribute on the <item> element:

```

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>

```

*Example* Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```

<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor,
et nos cedamus
amori.</quote>
</item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>

```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

*Example* Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse

lines. Note that, in this case, the `<label>` element appears *within* the `<p>` or `<lg>` element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-
<lb/>r  mefnage. Or des que le confente-
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft
<lb/> arreft , quoy que de faict il ne foit
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale
    entre les Romains.</label>
    <lb/> confrom . Depuis la conforma-
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft fous
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a  pouf  vn en-
<lb/>fant de famille, eft fous la puiffance
[...]</p>
<p>In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand
margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but
approximately in the middle of it.
</p>
<p>If so desired the <gi>type</gi> attribute may be used to
distinguish different categories of label.</p>
```

---

**<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. 2.4. 15.3.2. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.declarable` (`@default`)

*Member of* `model.profileDescPart`

*Contained by*

*header:* `profileDesc`

*May contain*

*header:* `language`

*Declaration*

```
element langUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  language+
}
```

*Example*

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Qu becois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

---

**<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. ]



*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

**@ident** (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global xml:lang attribute.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.language

**@usage** specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" }

*Member of*

*header:* langUsage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.language },
  attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```

<langUsage xml:lang="en-US">
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic
script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>

```

*Note* Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

---

<lb/> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. 7.2.5. ]

*Module core* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo)  
att.breaking (@break)

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig  
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Example* This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the  
Fruit</l>  
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>  
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our  
woe,</l>
```

*Example* This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart rend="italic">  
  <lb/>L'auteur susdict supplie les Lecteurs  
<lb/>benevoles, soy reserver à rire au  
soi-<lb break="no"/>xante & dixhuytiesme livre.  
</titlePart>
```

*Note* By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where

structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The type attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

**<lg>** (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) att.divLike ( @org, @sample ) ( att.fragmentable ( @part ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype ) att.declaring ( @decls )

*Member of* macro.paraContent model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del emph head hi item l lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figure

*header:* change licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* desc gap head index l label lb lg milestone note pb stage

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Declaration*

```

element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

*Schematron* <sch:assert

test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert>

*Example*

```

<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>

```

```
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

*Note* contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

---

**<licence>** contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.datable ( @calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c ( @when))

*Member of* model.availabilityPart

*Contained by*

*header:* availability

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element licence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<licence
  target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-
  Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0
  New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

*Example*

```
<availability>
  <licence
    target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
```

```

    notBefore="2013-01-01">
    <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>

```

*Note* A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The target attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The when, notBefore, notAfter, from or to attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

@type describes the form of the list.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **ordered** list items are numbered or lettered.

**bulleted** list items are marked with a bullet or other typographic device.

**simple** list items are not numbered or bulleted. [Default]

**gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

*Note* The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change keywords licence revisionDesc sourceDesc

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* gap head index item label lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

*Declaration*

```

element list
{
  att.global.attributes,

```

```
att.sortable.attributes,  
attribute type { "ordered" | "bulleted" | "simple" | "gloss" | xsd:Name }?,  
(  
  ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,  
  (  
    ( item, model.global* )+  
    | (  
      headLabel?,  
      headItem?,  
      ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+  
    )  
  ),  
  ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*  
)  
}
```

*Example*

```
<list type="ordered">  
  <item>a butcher</item>  
  <item>a baker</item>  
  <item>a candlestick maker, with <list type="bullets">  
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>  
    <item>bells on his toes</item>  
  </list>  
</item>  
</list>
```

*Example* The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">  
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>  
  <list type="ordered">  
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who  
is caught with  
    the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of  
the goods is] over  
    eightpence. <list type="ordered">  
      <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief  
with his  
        wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that  
account – or to  
        clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>  
      <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or  
to escape, he is  
        not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>  
      <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40  
days, and he may  
        then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand  
surety for him  
        that he will desist for ever.</item>  
      <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with  
his wergild,  
        or to bring him back there.</item>  
      <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with  
his wergild,  
        whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and  
everyone of those who  
        supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a  
fine.</item>  
    </list>  
  </list>
```

```

    </item>
    <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
    no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
    person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list type="ordered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that
appointed day,
        he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him
is to strike him
        down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
        or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
    his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value
of the goods and
    120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
    often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
    refused him justice. <list type="ordered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave,
and it becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
werigild on the first
        occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all
that he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
        an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to
the same.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
    a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot
deny it or is
    afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>

```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

#### Example

```

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross. <list type="simple">
    <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
        subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with

```

```
the sign of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
  the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with the sign of
  the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign
of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>
```

*Note* May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

---

**<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence sourceDesc

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*core:* bibl head lb listBibl milestone pb

*linking:* anchor

*Declaration*

```
element listBibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike | listBibl )+ )
}
```



*Example*

```

<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>

```

**<mentioned>** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [3.3.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

element mentioned { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

*Example*

```
There is thus a
striking accentual difference between a verbal form like
<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second
syllable of the
word, and its participial derivative
<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.
```

---

**<milestone/>** marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.10.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.milestoneUnit (@unit) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Example*

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

*Note* For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

**<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) ) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.nameLike.agent

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp respStmt rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element name
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#H0C001">0ccleve</name>
```

*Note* Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

---

**<note>** contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. 2.2.6. 3.11.2.7. 9.3.5.4. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) att.placement ( @place ) att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target, @evaluate ) att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

**@anchored** indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Default* true

*Note* In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. page 218, lines 3–4). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the n attribute.

**@targetEnd** points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Values* reference to the xml:id(s) of element(s) which end at the location(s) in question, or to an empty element at the point in question.

*Note* This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.5.4. .

*Member of* model.noteLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p

pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
notesStmt principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p  
pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute anchored { data.truthValue }?,
  attribute targetEnd { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example* In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only  
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the  
painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH">  
<term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two  
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,  
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid  
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as  
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and  
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.  
</note> style of the  
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this  
psychological significance.

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for  
example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI Header:

```

<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>

```

*Example* The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to  
mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century,  
<note n="126" anchored="true"> The  
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,  
a reference to  
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from  
Geniza documents  
published by Jacob Mann.

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

---

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. 2.2. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* note

*Declaration*

element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, model.noteLike+ }
--

*Example*

```
<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

*Note* Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

---

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3. ]

*Module core* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))  
att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

*@type* indicates the type of numeric value.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

data.enumerated
-----------------

*Suggested values include:* **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

**ordinal** ordinal number, e.g. 21st

**fraction** fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

**percentage** a percentage

*Note* If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

**@value** supplies the value of the number in standard form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.numeric

*Values* a numeric value.

*Note* The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric.

*Member of* model.measureLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element num
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ranging.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute value { data.numeric }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

*Example*

```

<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on
my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>
</num> cm per second.</p>

```

*Note* Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. . The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

**<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.divTopPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*textstructure:* body div group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*textstructure:* argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

*Declaration*

```
element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | argument      | byline      | dateline      | epigraph
```

*Example*

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

*Example*

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have
prevented me from
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

---

**<orig>** (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. 12. ]

*Module* core — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**



*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element orig
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```

<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>

```

*Example* More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```

<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>

```

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part)

*Member of* model.pLike

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q sp stage

*figures:* figure

*header:* availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc licence projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc

*textstructure:* argument body div epigraph postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
<q>What have you
  done?</q>
</p>
<p>
  <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
  Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
  me.</q>
</p>

```

---

**<pb/>** (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system. [3.10.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo)  
att.breaking (@break)

*Member of* model.milestoneLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph  
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig  
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figure table

*header:* authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence  
principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate  
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed  
text titlePage titlePart trailer

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element pb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Example* Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
... </p>
```

*Example* A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the facs attribute

```
<body>
  <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
  <p/>
  <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
  <p/>
</body>
```

*Note* By convention, <pb> elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer. The global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself. The type attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

---

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1. ]

*Module analysis — List, of, Elements, and Described*

*Attributes* *Attributes* att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

**@force** indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

**weak** the punctuation mark is not a word separator

**inter** the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

**@unit** provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

**@pre** indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.truthValue

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*core:* abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear

*Declaration*

```
element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute pre { data.truthValue }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit ) *
}
```

*Example*

```
<phr>
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
```

```
<pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

**<postscript>** contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.divBottomPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div front group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* bibl cit desc gap head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* eg

*textstructure:* closer opener postscript signed trailer

*Declaration*

```
element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
    ( model.common ),
    ( model.global | model.common )*,
    ( ( model.divBottomPart ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
    logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
    the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
    axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
```

```
<p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
</postscript>
</div>
```

---

**<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. ]

*Module header* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* editionStmt titleStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

element principal { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
--

*Example*

```
<principal>Gary Taylor</principal>
```

---

**<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. 2.1.1. ]

*Module header* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.teiHeaderPart

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*header:* creation langUsage textClass

*Declaration*

element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.profileDescPart* ) }
---

*Example*

```

<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>

```

*Note* Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc>. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

**<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. 2.3. 15.3.2. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global analytic (@ana)) (att.global facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*Declaration*

```

element projectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}

```

*Example*

```

<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June
  1990</p>
</projectDesc>

```

**<ptr/>** (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.6. 16.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.cReferencing (*@cRef*)

*Member of* model.ptrLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain* Empty element

*Declaration*

```
element ptr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  empty
}
```

*Schematron* <s:report test=" @target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report>

*Example*

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

---

**<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

*Member of* model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

*Contained by*



*core:* bibl

*header:* publicationStmt

*textstructure:* docImprint

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>

```

---

**<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. 2.2. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* address date p pubPlace publisher

*header:* authority availability distributor idno

*Declaration*

```
element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}

```

*Example*

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>

```

```
<pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
<date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

*Example*

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

*Note* Although not enforced by the schemas, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

---

**<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.3. 2.2.4. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* publicationStmt

*textstructure:* docImprint

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
--

*Example*

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

*Note* Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

**<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.ascribed ( @who) att.source ( @source)

**@type** may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **spoken** representation of speech

**thought** representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

**written** quotation from a written source

**soCalled** authorial distance

**foreign** (foreign words)

**distinct** (linguistically distinct)

**term** (technical term)

**emph** (rhetorically emphasized)

**mentioned** refering to itself, not its normal referant

*Member of* model.qLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
att.ascribed.attributes,  
att.source.attributes,  
attribute type  
{  
  "spoken"  
  | "thought"  
  | "written"  
  | "soCalled"  
  | "foreign"  
  | "distinct"  
  | "term"  
  | "emph"  
  | "mentioned"  
  | xsd:Name  
  }?,  
macro.specialPara}
```

### Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

*Note* May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of rend that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

---

**<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. 16.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

*Member of* model.ptrLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb  
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element ref
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Schematron* <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

*Example*

```
<ref
  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"> See especially the
second
sentence</ref> See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.
```

*Example*

```
<ref
  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"> See especially the
second
sentence</ref>
```

*Example*

```
See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.
```

*Note* The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

---

**<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. 2.3. 2.3.6. ]

*Module header* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*Declaration*

```
element refsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<refsDecl>
  <cRefPattern
    matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
    replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
  </refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

*Example*

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
  <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
  element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
  number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
  followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
  level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

---

**<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.4.2. 12. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) att.editLike ( @evidence, @source, @instant ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence ) ) ) ( att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) ) att.typed ( @type, @subtype )

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb  
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

*Example* It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
</choice>
</q>
```

---

**<relatedItem>** contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.11.2.6. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@target** points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Member of* model.biblPart

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*May contain*

*core:* bibl ptr ref

*Declaration*

```
element relatedItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { data.pointer }?,
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}
```

*Schematron* <sch:report test="@target and count( child::\* ) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::\*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert>

*Example*

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
    </imprint>
    <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</title>
  </series>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
        <author>Shirley, James</author>
        <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
        <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in
Salisbury
          Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
        <imprint>
          <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
          <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
          <date>1655</date>
        </imprint>
        <extent>78 p.</extent>
      </monogr>
    </biblStruct>
  </relatedItem>
</biblStruct>
```

*Note* If the target attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element should be empty.

---

**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work.  
[3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described



*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.canonical ( @key, @ref)

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*core:* respStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

*Example*

```
<respStmt>
  <resp key="com">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>

```

*Note* The attributes key or ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form, by referring directly (using ref) or indirectly (using key) to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html> for bibliographic usage.

---

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

*May contain*

*core:* name resp

*Declaration*

```
element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

*Example*

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

---

**<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.5.2.1.1. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) att.docStatus ( @status )

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* teiHeader

*May contain*

*core:* list

*header:* change

*Declaration*

```
element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

*Note* If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

---

<row> contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. ]

*Module* figures — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*figures:* table

*May contain*

*figures:* cell

*Declaration*

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

*Example*

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

---

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. 3.5.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.nameLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element rs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said
<rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>
```

---

**<S>** (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. 8.4.1. ]

*Module analysis* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element s
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
```

att.typed.attributes,  
macro.phraseSeq}

*Schematron* <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report>

*Example*

```
<head>
  <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

*Note* The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead. The type attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

---

**<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.divWrapper

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* table

*textstructure:* body closer div group opener

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

element salute { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

*Example*

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</salute>
```

**<samplingDecl>** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [2.3.2. 2.3. 15.3.2. ]

*Module* header — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

*Member of* model.encodingDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* encodingDesc

*May contain*

*core:* p

*Declaration*

```
element samplingDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

*Example*

```
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle,
or end of each
  text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

*Note* This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

---

**<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level. [16.3. 6.2. 7.2.5. ]

*Module* linking — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element seg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```

<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>

```

*Example*

```

<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the
  ballfield.
</s>

```

*Example*

```

<seg type="preamble">
  <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in
  Frankish country.</seg>
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>
</seg>

```

*Note* The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

---

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. 2.2. ]

*Module* header — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* biblScope editor p respStmt title

*header:* idno

*Declaration*

```
element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )*, ( idno | biblScope )* ) )
}
```

*Example*

```
<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <biblScope unit="vol">1.2</biblScope>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

---

**<sic>** (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.4.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg



*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element sic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

*Example*

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

*Example* It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

*Example*

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
  <sic>a Table</sic>
  <corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
```

---

**<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.divBottomPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body closer div front group opener postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

*Example*

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

*Example*

```
<closer>
  <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
  <list>
    <item>John Bull,</item>
    <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
</signed>
</closer>
```

---

**<soCalled>** contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.link ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

*Example*

To edge his way along  
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance,  
was what the  
knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

**<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) att.declarable ( @default )

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* bibl list listBibl p

*figures:* table

*Declaration*

```
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
    <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
```

*Example*

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

**<sp>** (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.ascribed (@who)

*Member of* model.divPart

*Contained by*

*core:* item note q stage

*figures:* figure

*header:* change licence

*textstructure:* argument body div epigraph postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* cit gap index l lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q speaker stage

*figures:* figure table

*linking:* anchor

*Declaration*

```
element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      (
        lg | model.lLike | model.pLike | model.listLike
        model.global*
      )+
    )
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unrepresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
first place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
for the present I
    will forbear...</p>
</sp>
```

*Note* The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

---

*Note* Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

---

**<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*core:* sp

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

<pre>element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</pre>
---

*Example*

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

---

**<sponsor>** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. ]

*Module* header — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.respLike

*Contained by*

*core:* bibl

*header:* editionStmt titleStmt

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned  
milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

*figures:* figure

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element sponsor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

*Example*

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

*Note* Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders*, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

---

**<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.4. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

**@type** indicates the kind of stage direction.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **setting** describes a setting.

**entrance** describes an entrance.

**exit** describes an exit.

**business** describes stage business.

**novelistic** is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

**delivery** describes how a character speaks.

**modifier** gives some detail about a character.

**location** describes a location.

**mixed** more than one of the above

*Member of* model.stageLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title  
unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p  
pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element stage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "setting"
    | "entrance"
    | "exit"
    | "business"
    | "novelistic"
    | "delivery"
    | "modifier"
    | "location"
    | "mixed"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

*Example*

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>

```

**<table>** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1. ]

*Module* figures — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

**@rows** indicates the number of rows in the table.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Values* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

*Note* Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

**@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Values* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

*Note* Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

*Member of* model.listLike

*Contained by*

*core:* add corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc figure

*header:* change licence sourceDesc

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* argument body div docEdition epigraph postscript signed titlePart

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* gap graphic head index lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure formula row

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript  
salute signed trailer

*Declaration*

```
element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute rows { data.count }?,
  attribute cols { data.count }?,
  (
    ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
    ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( ( model.graphicLike ), model.global* )+ ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<table rows="4" cols="4">
<head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
<row role="label">
  <cell role="data">
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
  <cell role="data">5</cell>
  <cell role="data">8</cell>
  <cell role="data">128</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
  <cell role="data">6</cell>
  <cell role="data">36</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
```



```

    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">20</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
    <cell role="data">1</cell>
    <cell role="data">11</cell>
    <cell role="data">22</cell>
  </row>
</table>

```

*Note* Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

**<taxonomy>** defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@rend*) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* classDecl

*May contain*

*core:* bibl desc gloss

*header:* category

*Declaration*

```

element taxonomy
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.glossLike | model.descLike ) *
    | category+
    | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* )
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
    <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
    <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
    <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>

```

```
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
  <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
  <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
<category xml:id="tax.b.d">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
    <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
    <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
</taxonomy>
```

---

**<teiCorpus>** contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. 15.1. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

**@version** The version of the TEI scheme

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.version

*Default* 5.0

*Values* a TEI version number

*Members* ~~Contained by~~

*core:* teiCorpus

*May contain*

*core:* teiCorpus

*header:* teiHeader

*textstructure:* TEI

*Declaration*

```
element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
}
```

*Example*

```
<teiCorpus version="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader/>
  <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <teiHeader/>
```

```

    <text/>
  </TEI>
  <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <teiHeader/>
    <text/>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>

```

*Note* Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text. This element is mandatory when applicable.

**<teiHeader>** (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text. [2.1.1. 15.1. ]

*Module header* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*@type* specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **text** the header is attached to a single text.

[Default]

**corpus** the header is attached to a corpus.

*Member of*

*core:* teiCorpus

*textstructure:* TEI

*May contain*

*header:* encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

*Declaration*

```

element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}

```

*Example*

```

<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
      <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
    </respStmt>
  </fileDesc>

```

```
<name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <istributor>Oxford Text Archive</istributor>
  <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
  </address>
  <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The
Norton Facsimile,
    1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of
old-spelling
      concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised
for use during the
      editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
    <correction>
      <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
      <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and
ligatured
        forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <cRefPattern
      matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)"
      replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2[@n='$2']/lb[@n='$3'])">
      <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse
order as that
        listed here: <list>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
        </item>
          <item>a period</item>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
        </item>
          <item>a space</item>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
        </item>
        </list>
      </p>
    </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
```

```

      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    </item>
    <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
  </list>
</revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

*Note* One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

**<term>** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.declaring ( @decls) att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed ( @type, @subtype) att.canonical ( @key, @ref) att.sortable ( @sortKey) att.cReferencing ( @cRef)

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi index item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder keywords language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```

element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

*Example*

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a `<term>parser</term>`, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

*Example*

We may define `<term xml:id="TDPV" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>` as  
`<gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>`

*Note* This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent `<index>` element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The `<term>` element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the `<term>` element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. As with other members of the `att.canonical` class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the `ref` attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the `key` attribute). Because the mutually exclusive `target` and `cRef` attributes overlap with the function of the `ref` attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

---

**`<text>`** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4.15.1. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))  
`att.declaring` (`@decls`) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* TEI group

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* gap index lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* back body front group

*Declaration*

<pre>element text {   att.global.attributes,   att.declaring.attributes,   att.typed.attributes,   (</pre>
--

```

        model.global*,
        ( front, model.global* )?,
        ( body | group ),
        model.global*,
        ( back, model.global* )?
    )
}

```

*Example*

```

<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>

```

*Example* The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```

<text>
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text/>
    <text/>
  </group>
</text>

```

*Note* This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

---

**<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. ]

*Module header* — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )) (att.global.analytic ( @ana )) (att.global.facs ( @facs )) att.declarable ( @default )

*Member of* model.profileDescPart

*Contained by*

*header:* profileDesc

*May contain*

*header:* catRef classCode keywords

*Declaration*

```

element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords )*
}

```

*Example*

```
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="acprose">
    <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
<textClass>
  <catRef target="#acprose"/>
  <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
    <list>
      <item>End of the world</item>
      <item>History - philosophy</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

---

**<time>** contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable (@calendar, @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.dateLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

element time {
-------------------



```

att.global.attributes,
att.dataable.attributes,
att.editLike.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

*Example*

As he sat smiling, the  
quarter struck – <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.5. ]

*Module* core — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) att.canonical ( @key, @ref ) att.typed ( ~~type~~, @subtype )

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

*Derived from* att.typed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **main** main title

**sub** (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

**alt** (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

**short** abbreviated form of title

**desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

*Note* This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **a** (analytic) analytic title (article, poem, or other item published as part of a larger item)

**m** (monographic) monographic title (book, collection, or other item published as a distinct item, including single volumes of multi-volume works)

**j** (journal) journal title

**s** (series) series title

**u** (unpublished) title of unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

*Note* The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is

*ipso facto* of level a, and one appearing within a <series> element of level s. For this reason, the level attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

*Member of* model.emphLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan  
foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace  
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language  
licence principal seriesStmt sponsor titleStmt

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb  
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

*Example*

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18-21 July 1989</title>
```

*Example*

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

*Example*

```
<title type="full">
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
  <title type="sub">an international journal for
```

```

    epistemology, methodology and history of
    science</title>
</title>

```

*Note* The attributes key and ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

**<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*@type* classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Note* This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the main title page of a work.

*Member of* model.frontPart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back front

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp

*core:* gap graphic index lb milestone note pb

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor

*textstructure:* argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph titlePart

*Declaration*

```

element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( model.titlepagePart ),
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
  )
}

```

*Example*

```

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>

```

```
<docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
<byline>By T.D.</byline>
<figure>
  <head>TP</head>
  <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
  <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
</figure>
<docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
<name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

---

**<titlePart>** contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*@type* specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Suggested values include:* **main** main title of the work [Default]

**sub** (subordinate) subtitle of the work

**alt** (alternate) alternative title of the work

**short** abbreviated form of title

**desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

*Member of* model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

*Contained by*

*textstructure:* back docTitle front titlePage

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss  
graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb  
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

*Example*

```

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
    Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
    Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
    at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
    <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. 2.2. ]

*Module* header — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs))

*Member of*

*Contained by*

*header:* fileDesc

*May contain*

*core:* author editor respStmt title

*header:* funder principal sponsor

*Declaration*

```

element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }

```

*Example*

```

<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
  transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>

```

**<trailer>** contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. [4.2.4. 4.2. ]

*Module* textstructure — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype)

*Member of* model.divBottomPart

*Contained by*

*core:* lg list

*figures:* figure table

*textstructure:* back body div front group postscript

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi  
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term  
time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

*Example*

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

---

**<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. 3.4.3. ]

*Module* core — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend ) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) ) ( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) ) ( att.global.facs ( @facs ) ) att.editLike ( @evidence, @source, @instant ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence ) ) ) ( att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

**@reason** indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

*Values* one or more words describing the difficulty, e.g. *faded*,  
*background-noise*, *passing-truck*, *illegible*, *eccentric-ductus*.

```
<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear
    reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
  </p>
</div>
```

**@hand** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Values* must point to a hand identifier typically but not necessarily declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1. ).

**@agent** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include:* **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

**mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

**smoke** damage results from smoke

*Member of* model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

*Contained by*

*analysis:* pc s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp pc s w

*core:* abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

*figures:* figure formula table

*header:* idno

*linking:* anchor seg

*tagdocs:* att code eg gi ident val

*Declaration*

```
element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editlike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}
}
```

*Example*

and from time to time invited in like manner  
his att<unclear>ention</unclear>

Here the last few letters of the word are hard to read.

*Example*

<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said  
... </u>

*Note* The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty,

uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. .The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

---

**<val>** (value) contains a single attribute value. [22. 22.4.5. ]

*Module* tagdocs — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

*Member of* model.phrase.xml

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s

*core:* abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell figDesc

*header:* authority change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain* Character data only

*Declaration*

element val { att.global.attributes, text }

*Example*

**<val>**unknown**</val>**

---

**<w>** (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1. ]

*Module* analysis — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Attributes* Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

**@lemma** provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

data.text

**@lemmaRef** provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype*

data.pointer

*Member of* model.segLike

*Contained by*

*analysis:* s w

*core:* abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign



gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref  
reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

*figures:* cell

*header:* change distributor edition extent licence

*linking:* seg

*textstructure:* byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint opener  
salute signed titlePart trailer

*May contain*

*analysis:* interp interpGrp w

*core:* abbr add choice corr del expan gap hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

*figures:* figure

*linking:* anchor seg

*Declaration*

```
element w
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute lemma { data.text }?,
  attribute lemmaRef { data.pointer }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | seg      | w      | m      | c      | model.global      | model.lPart      | m
  )
}
```

*Example*

```
<w
  type="verb"
  lemma="hit"
  lem-
maRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>
```

## Model classes

**model.addrPart** groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* address

*Members* model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs idno] addrLine

**model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or e-mail address. [1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* address

**model.availabilityPart** groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* availability

*Members* licence

---

**model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* cit listBibl model.inter relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy

*Members* bibl

---

**model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* bibl

*Members* model.respLike [author editor respStmt sponsor funder principal]  
model.imprintPart [publisher biblScope pubPlace distributor] bibl relatedItem  
edition extent

---

**model.choicePart** groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.4. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* choice

*Members* sic corr reg orig unclear abbr expan seg

---

**model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* argument body div epigraph figure postscript

*Members* model.divPart [model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] lg sp] model.inter [model.egLike [eg] model.biblLike [bibl] model.labelLike [desc label] model.listLike [list listBibl table] model.stageLike [stage] model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit] q] ]

*Note* This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

---

**model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. 13.3.6. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* date time

---

**model.descLike** groups elements which contain a description of their function.

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* category gap graphic interp interpGrp taxonomy

*Members* desc

---

**model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* body div group lg list table

*Members* model.divWrapper [byline dateline argument epigraph salute docAuthor  
docDate] model.divBottomPart [trailer closer signed postscript]

---

**model.divBottomPart** groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* back figure front model.divBottom postscript

*Members* trailer closer signed postscript

---

**model.divGenLike** groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* body div

*Members* divGen

---

**model.divLike** groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* back body div front

*Members* div

---

**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* macro.specialPara model.common

*Members* model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] lg sp

*Note* Note that this element class does not include members of the **model.inter** class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* body div group lg list

*Members* model.divWrapper [byline dateline argument epigraph salute docAuthor  
docDate] model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] opener]

---

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* model.divTop postscript

*Members* model.headLike [head] opener

---

**model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* model.divBottom model.divTop

*Members* byline dateline argument epigraph salute docAuthor docDate

---

**model.egLike** groups elements containing examples or illustrations. [22.1.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* cit model.inter

*Members* eg

---

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

*Members* foreign emph mentioned soCalled gloss term title code ident

---

**model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* encodingDesc

*Members* projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl refsDecl classDecl

---

**model.entryPart.top** groups high level elements within a structured dictionary entry [9.2. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by*

*Members* cit

*Note* Members of this class typically contain related parts of a dictionary entry which form a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

---

**model.frontPart** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* back front

*Members* divGen titlePage

---

**model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* address argument back bibl body byline cit closer date div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure front group head lg list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener postscript sp table text time titlePage w

*Members* model.global.meta [index interp interpGrp] model.milestoneLike [milestone pb lb anchor] model.noteLike [note] model.global.edit [gap] figure

---

**model.global.edit** groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.global

*Members* gap

---

**model.global.meta** groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.global

*Members* index interp interpGrp

*Note* Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

---

**model.glossLike** groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* category taxonomy

*Members* gloss

---

**model.graphicLike** groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* figure formula model.phrase table

*Members* graphic formula

---

**model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* argument divGen figure listBibl model.divTopPart table

*Members* head

---

**model.hiLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w

*Members* hi

---

**model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* bibl model.phrase

*Members* model.hiLike [hi] model.emphLike [foreign emph mentioned soCalled gloss term title code ident]

---

**model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.biblPart

*Members* publisher biblScope pubPlace distributor

---

**model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* head macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common

*Members* model.egLike [eg] model.biblLike [bibl] model.labelLike [desc label]  
model.listLike [list listBibl table] model.stageLike [stage] model.qLike  
[model.quoteLike [cit] q]

---

**model.lLike** groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* head lg model.divPart sp

*Members* l

---

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* lg model.inter

*Members* desc label

---

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

*Members* model.hiLike [hi] model.emphLike [foreign emph mentioned soCalled gloss term title code ident] model.pPart.editorial [choice abbr expan] model.ptrLike [ptr ref] model.phrase.xml [att gi val] model.pPart.data [model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [num] model.addressLike [address] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs idno] ]

---

**model.linePart** groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by*

*Members* model.segLike [seg s w pc] model.hiLike [hi] model.pPart.transcriptional [sic corr reg orig add del unclear] choice

---

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [3.7. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.inter sourceDesc sp

*Members* list listBibl table

---

**model.measureLike** groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* num

---

**model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. 3.10.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* listBibl model.global

*Members* milestone pb lb anchor

---

**model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.addrPart model.pPart.data

*Members* model.nameLike.agent [name] rs idno

*Note* A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.nameLike respStmt

*Members* name

*Note* This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* model.global notesStmt

*Members* note

---

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* availability editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc model.divPart projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc sp

*Members* p

---

**model.pLike.front** groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* back front

*Members* head byline argument epigraph docTitle titlePart docAuthor docEdition docImprint docDate

---

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

*Members* model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [num] model.addressLike [address] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs idno]



**model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* bibl model.phrase pc w

*Members* model.pPart.editorial [choice abbr expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [sic corr reg orig add del unclear]

---

**model.pPart.editorial** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

*Members* choice abbr expan

---

**model.pPart.transcriptional** groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* model.linePart model.pPart.edit

*Members* sic corr reg orig add del unclear

---

**model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* byline closer date docImprint head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener time

*Members* model.segLike [seg s w pc] model.highlighted [model.hiLike [hi] model.emphLike [foreign emph mentioned soCalled gloss term title code ident] ] model.graphicLike [graphic formula] model.pPart.edit [model.pPart.editorial [choice abbr expan] model.pPart.transcriptional [sic corr reg orig add del unclear] ] model.ptrLike [ptr ref] model.lPart model.phrase.xml [att gi val] model.pPart.data [model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [num] model.addressLike [address] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [name] rs idno] ]

*Note* This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class *inter* or *chunk*. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

---

**model.phrase.xml** groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values [22. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

*Members* att gi val

---

**model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* profileDesc

*Members* creation langUsage textClass

---

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase relatedItem

*Members* ptr ref

---

**model.publicationStmtPart** groups elements which may appear within the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI Header. [2.2.4. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* publicationStmt

*Members* address date publisher pubPlace distributor authority idno availability

---

**model.qLike** groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* cit model.inter sp

*Members* model.quoteLike [cit] q

---

**model.quoteLike** groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* model.qLike

*Members* cit

---

**model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt

*Members* author editor respStmt sponsor funder principal

---

**model.segLike** groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Used by* bibl model.linePart model.phrase

*Members* seg s w pc

*Note* The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or

attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

---

**model.stageLike** groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* lg model.inter sp

*Members* stage

*Note* Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

**model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI Header.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* teiHeader

*Members* encodingDesc profileDesc

---

**model.titlepagePart** groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* titlePage

*Members* graphic byline argument epigraph docTitle titlePart docAuthor docEdition docImprint docDate

---

## Attribute classes

---

**att.ascribed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* q sp change

*Attributes* Attributes

**@who** indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Values* For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the who attribute. **<castItem type="role">**

```
<role
  xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem
  type="role">
  <role
    xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
  <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<sp
  who="#Barnardo">
  <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
  <l
    n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp
  who="#Francisco">
  <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
  <l
    n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

---

**att.breaking** provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* milestone pb lb

*Attributes* Attributes

**@break** indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Sample values include* **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

**no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

**maybe** no assertion is made as to whether or not the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token.

In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lāðost* and *reord-berendum*. **<ab>**  
...epesa tome iu icpæs Ʒeporden pita heardoƿt . leodum la**<lb**  
          break="no"/>  
ðost ærþan ichim lifes ƷeƷ rihtne Ʒerymde reord be**<lb**  
          break="no"/>  
rendum hƷæt me þaƷeƷeorðode puldres ealdor ofer...  
**</ab>**

**att.cReferencing** provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* gloss term ptr ref

*Attributes* Attributes

**@cRef** (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

*Values* the value of cRef should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.6. ) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target

*Note* The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the decls attribute. Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element.

---

**att.canonical** provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* att.naming [att.personal [name] rs author editor pubPlace] term resp title docTitle docAuthor

*Attributes* Attributes

**@key** provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

<author>

<name

key="name 427308"

type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</name>

</author>

*Note* The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

**@ref** (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Note* The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

**att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Members* name date time licence creation change

*Attributes* Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when)

**@calendar** indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@calendar]">

<sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert></sch:rule>

He was born on **<date**

calendar="#Gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date>

(**<date**

calendar="#Julian"

when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).

**@period** supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Note* This superclass provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the **att.datable.w3c** class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the **att.datable.iso** and **att.datable.custom** classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

**att.datable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements, and Described**

*Members* att.datable [name date time licence creation change]

*Attributes* Attributes

**@when** supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g.

yyyy-mm-dd.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.temporal.w3c

*Values* A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. **<p>**

**<date**

when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>

**<date**

when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>

```

    <time
      when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8
    pm</time>
    <time
      when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
    <date
      when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
    <date
      when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
    <date
      when="---01">the first of the month</date>
    <date
      when="--08">August</date>
    <date
      when="2006">MMVI</date>
    <date
      when="0056">AD 56</date>
    <date
      when="-0056">56 BC</date>
  </p>
  This list begins in
  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the
  Sunday after
  Pentecost, in that year the <date
    calendar="#Julian"
    when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
      <date
        when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
      </dateline>
      <salute>To
        Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time
          when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
      </opener>

```

*Note* The value of the when attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the when attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

---

**att.datcat** introduces dcr:datacat and dcr:ValueDatacat attributes that may be used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [9.5.2. 18.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* att:segLike [seg s w pc]

*Attributes* Attributes

**@datcat** contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOCat.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

**@valueDatcat** contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Example* In this example dcr:datcat relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and dcr:valueDatcat the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org](http://www.isocat.org), which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.

```
<fs
  xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">
  <f
    name="POS"
    dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"
    fVal="common noun"
    dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"/>
  </f>
</fs>
```

*Note* ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, dcr:datcat and dcr:valueDatcat.

---

**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose decls attribute. [15.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* bibl listBibl availability sourceDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl refsDecl langUsage textClass

*Attributes* Attributes

**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.truthValue`

*Legal values are:* **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

**false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default]

*Note* The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. . Only one element of a particular type may have a default attribute with a value of true.



**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* p gloss term ptr ref graphic lg text body group div front back

*Attributes* Attributes

**@decls** identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Values* must identify a set of declarable elements of different types.

*Note* The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. .

---

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* att.editLike [att.transcriptional [add del] corr reg gap unclear name date time expan]

*Attributes* Attributes att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)

**@unit** names the unit used for the measurement

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Suggested values include:* **cm** (centimetres)

**mm** (millimetres)

**in** (inches)

**lines** lines of text

**chars** (characters) characters of text

**@quantity** specifies the length in the units specified

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@extent** indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.text`

*Values* any measurement phrase, e.g. *25 letters*, *2 × 3 inches*.

**<gap**  
  extent="5 words"/>

**<height**  
  extent="half the page"/>

**@precision** characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.certainty`

**@scope** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **all** measurement applies to all instances.

**most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

**range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

---

**att.divLike** provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *lg* *div*

*Attributes* Attributes *att.fragmentable* (*@part*)

**@org** (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **composite** composite content: i.e. no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

**uniform** uniform content: i.e. the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence. [Default]

**@sample** indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.

**medial** division lacks material at start and end.

**final** division lacks material at start.

**unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.

**complete** division is not a sample. [Default]

---

**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *bibl* *revision* *Desc* *change*

*Attributes* Attributes

**@status** describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **approved**

**candidate**

**cleared**

deprecated  
 draft [Default]  
 embargoed  
 expired  
 frozen  
 galley  
 proposed  
 published  
 recommendation  
 submitted  
 unfinished  
 withdrawn

*Example*

```

<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change when="2010-10-21" status="published"/>
  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
  <change when="2010-08-02" status="embargoed"/>
  <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen" who="#MSM"/>
  <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft" who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>

```

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [1. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* *att.transcriptional* [add del] corr reg gap unclear name date time expan

*Attributes* *Attributes* *att.dimensions* (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) *att.responsibility* (@cert, @resp)

**@evidence** indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

**external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.

**conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

**@source** contains a list of one or more pointers indicating sources supporting the given intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Values* A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the *xml:id*

attribute on a <witness> or <msDesc> element elsewhere in the document.

**@instant** indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.xTruthValue`

*Default* false

*Note* The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

---

**att.edition** provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* milestone pb lb

*Attributes* Attributes

**@ed** (edition) supplies an arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.code` separated by whitespace

*Values* A string of characters or sigil used conventionally to identify the edition.

**@edRef** (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Example*

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree,whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

*Example*

```
<listBibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>,
  <date>1937</date>
  </bibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
  </bibl>
</listBibl>
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of
the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
```

```

strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of
their ancient culture,
still living their personal lives in zest and endless
novelty of action, ... I saw myself still
preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>

```

**att.fragmentable** groups structural elements which may be fragmented, usually as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *att.divLike* [*lg div*] *att.segLike* [*seg s w pc*] *p l*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@part** specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure : for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

**N** (no) either the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness. [Default]

**I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

**M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

**F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

*Note* The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *p* *foreign* *emph* *hi* *q* *cit* *mentioned* *soCalled* *desc* *gloss* *term* *sic* *corr* *choice* *reg* *orig* *gap* *add* *del* *unclear* *name* *rs* *address* *addrLine* *num* *date* *time* *abbr* *expan* *ptr* *ref* *list* *item* *label* *head* *note* *index* *graphic* *milestone* *pb* *lb* *author* *editor* *respStmt* *resp* *title* *publisher* *biblScope* *pubPlace* *bibl* *listBibl* *relatedItem* *l* *lg* *sp* *speaker* *stage* *teiCorpus* *divGen* *teiHeader* *fileDesc* *titleStmt* *sponsor* *funder* *principal* *editionStmt* *edition* *extent* *publicationStmt* *distributor* *authority* *idno* *availability* *licence* *seriesStmt* *notesStmt* *sourceDesc* *encodingDesc* *projectDesc* *samplingDecl* *editorialDecl* *refsDecl* *classDecl* *taxonomy* *category* *profileDesc* *creation* *langUsage* *language* *textClass* *keywords* *classCode* *catRef* *revisionDesc* *change* *TEI* *text* *body* *group* *div* *trailer* *byline* *dateline* *argument* *epigraph* *opener* *closer* *salute* *signed* *postscript* *titlePage* *docTitle* *titlePart* *docAuthor* *docEdition* *docImprint* *docDate* *front* *back* *table* *row* *cell* *formula* *figure* *figDesc* *anchor* *seg* *s* *w* *pc* *interp* *interpGrp* *att* *code* *eg* *gi* *ident* *val*

*Attributes* *Attributes* *att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@next*, *@prev*) *att.global.analytic* (*@ana*) *att.global.facs* (*@facs*)

**@xml:id** (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* xsd:ID

*Note* The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10. .

**@n** (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.text

*Values* the value consists of a single token which may however contain punctuation characters, whitespace or word separating characters. It need not be restricted to numbers.

*Note* The n attribute may be used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

**@xml:lang** (language) indicates the language of the element content using a tag generated according to BCP 47.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.language

*Values* The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its `ident` attribute should be supplied in the TEI Header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETF Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

**<p>** ... The consequences of  
this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last  
**<foreign>**  
    xml:lang="rap">ariki**</foreign>** or chief  
(Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to  
ancestral territorial organization.**</p>**

*Note* the xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the `teiHeader` from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages. The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>.

**@rend** (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– $\infty$  occurrences of data.word separated by whitespace

*Values* may contain any number of tokens, each of which may contain

letters, punctuation marks, or symbols, but not whitespace or word-separating characters.

```
<head
  rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
<lb/>On Her <lb/>
  <hi
    rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

*Note* These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the `rend` attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the `rend` attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

---

**att.global.analytic** provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.3. ]

*Module analysis* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* att.global [p foreign emph hi q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs address addrLine num date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head note index graphic milestone pb lb author editor respStmt resp title publisher biblScope pubPlace bibl listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl refsDecl classDecl taxonomy category profileDesc creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef revisionDesc change TEI text body group div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor docEdition docImprint docDate front back table row cell formula figure figDesc anchor seg s w pc interp interpGrp att code eg gi ident val]

*Attributes* Attributes

**@ana** (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the `ana` attribute appears.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Values* one or more valid identifiers of one or more interpretive elements (usually `<fs>` or `<interp>`), separated by white space.

*Note* When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

---

**att.global.facs** groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a transcription of it. [11.1. ]

*Module* transcr — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* att.global [p foreign emph hi q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs address addrLine num date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head note index graphic milestone pb lb author editor respStmt resp title publisher biblScope pubPlace bibl listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl refsDecl classDecl taxonomy category profileDesc creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef revisionDesc change TEI text body group div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor docEdition docImprint docDate front back table row cell formula figure figDesc anchor seg s w pc interp interpGrp att code eg gi ident val]

*Attributes* Attributes

**@facs** (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

**att.global.linking** defines a set of attributes for hypertext and other linking, which are enabled for all elements when the additional tag set for linking is selected.

*Module* linking — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* att.global [p foreign emph hi q cit mentioned soCalled desc gloss term sic corr choice reg orig gap add del unclear name rs address addrLine num date time abbr expan ptr ref list item label head note index graphic milestone pb lb author editor respStmt resp title publisher biblScope pubPlace bibl listBibl relatedItem l lg sp speaker stage teiCorpus divGen teiHeader fileDesc titleStmt sponsor funder principal editionStmt edition extent publicationStmt distributor authority idno availability licence seriesStmt notesStmt sourceDesc encodingDesc projectDesc samplingDecl editorialDecl refsDecl classDecl taxonomy category profileDesc creation langUsage language textClass keywords classCode catRef revisionDesc change TEI text body group div trailer byline dateline argument epigraph opener closer salute signed postscript titlePage docTitle titlePart docAuthor docEdition docImprint docDate front back table row cell formula figure figDesc anchor seg s w pc interp interpGrp att code eg gi ident val]

*Attributes* Attributes

**@corresp** (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

**<p>** In order to meet your instructions more fully on that subject,

I directed **<persName**

corresp="personography.xml#pemberton\_jd">Mr Surveyor Pemberton</persName>

to draw up a report describing in a general manner the existing arrangements for the sale of



```

land on <placeName
  corresp="placeography.xml#vancouver_island">Vancouver's
Island</placeName>,
and the proposed arrangements for the sale of land in
<placeName
  corresp="placeography.xml#british_columbia">British
Columbia</placeName>.
</p>
<group>
  <text
    xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
    xml:lang="mi">
    <body
      xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div
        type="chapter">
        <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i
nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
  <text
    xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
    xml:lang="en">
    <body
      xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
      corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div
        type="chapter">
        <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal
of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
</group>In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each
containing the same document in a different language. The
correspondance is indicated using <corresp>. The language is
indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the
tag with the <corresp> and the tag pointed to by the
<corresp> inhreit the value from their immediate parent.

```

**@next** points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

**@prev** (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

---

**att.interpLike** provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [17.2. ]

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* interp interpGrp

*Attributes* Attributes att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

**@type** indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

*Status* Recommended

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Sample values include:* **image** identifies an image in the passage.

**character** identifies a character associated with the passage.

**theme** identifies a theme in the passage.

**allusion** identifies an allusion to another text.

**@inst** (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– $\infty$  occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

---

**att.media** provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* `graphic`

*Attributes* Attributes

**@width** Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.outputMeasurement`

**@height** Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.outputMeasurement`

**@scale** Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

---

**att.milestoneUnit** provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.10.3. 2.3.6.3. 2.3.6. ]

*Module* `core` — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* `milestone`

*Attributes* Attributes

**@unit** provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Suggested values include:* **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the `<pb>` element).

**column** column breaks.

**line** line breaks (synonymous with the `<lb>` element).

**book** any units termed book, liber, etc.  
**poem** individual poems in a collection.  
**canto** cantos or other major sections of a poem.  
**speaker** changes of speaker or narrator.  
**stanza** stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.  
**act** acts within a play.  
**scene** scenes within a play or act.  
**section** sections of any kind.  
**absent** passages not present in the reference edition.  
**unnumbered** passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```
<milestone
  n="23"
  ed="La"
  unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone
  n="24"
  ed="AV"
  unit="verse"/> ...
```

*Note* If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of unit. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered. In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

---

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. 13.3.5. ]

*Module* `tei` — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* `att.personal` [name] `rs` `author` `editor` `pubPlace`

*Attributes* Attributes `att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`)

**@role** may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

**@nymRef** (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

**att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *name*

*Attributes* *Attributes* *att.naming* (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (*att.canonical* (*@key*, *@ref*))

**@full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

*Status* *Optional*

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Legal values are:* **yes** the name component is spelled out in full.  
[Default]

**abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

**init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

**@sort** specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

*Status* *Optional*

*Datatype* **data.count**

*Values* A positive number indicating the sort order.

---

**att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. 11.3.1.4. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *add label note figure*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@place** specifies where this item is placed

*Status* *Recommended*

*Datatype* 1– $\infty$  occurrences of **data.enumerated** separated by whitespace

*Suggested values include:* **below** below the line

**bottom** at the foot of the page

**margin** in the margin (left, right, or both)

**top** at the top of the page

**opposite** on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

**overleaf** on the other side of the leaf

**above** above the line

**end** at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

**inline** within the body of the text.

**inspace** in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

**<add**

place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>

**<add**

place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>

---

```
<note
  place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

---

**att.pointing** defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. 3.6. ]

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* gloss term ptr ref note licence catRef

*Attributes* Attributes

**@targetLang** specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by target, using a language tag generated according to BCP 47.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.language

*Schematron* <sch:rule

```
  context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">
  <sch:assert test="count(@target)">@targetLang can only be used
  if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule>
```

*Values* The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI Header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their IETFInternet Engineering Task Force definitions.

**<linkGrp**

```
  xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
```

```
    <ptr
```

```
      xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
      target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
      type="tuv"
      targetLang="pl"/>
```

```
    <ptr
```

```
      xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
      target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
      type="tuv"
      targetLang="sw"/>
```

```
</linkGrp>
```

In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

**@target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Values* One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. **TEI%20Consortium**.

**@evaluate** specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

**one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

**none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

*Note* If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

---

**att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *att.dimensions* [*att.editLike* [*att.transcriptional* [*add del*] *corr reg gap unclear* *name date time expan*] ] *num*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@atLeast** gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@atMost** gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@min** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@max** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.numeric`

**@confidence** specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.probability`

---

**att.resourced** provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *graphic*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@url** (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

*Status* Required

*Datatype* data.pointer

---

**att.responsibility** provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *att.editLike* [*att.transcriptional* [*add del*] *corr reg gap unclear name date time* *expan*] *att.interpLike* [*interp interpGrp*] *sic orig abbr note seg*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.certainty

**@resp** (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1– $\infty$  occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

*Values* A pointer to an element typically, but not necessarily, in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text’s creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

---

**att.segLike** provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *seg s w pc*

*Attributes* *Attributes* *att.datcat* (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*) *att.fragmentable* (*@part*)

**@function** characterizes the function of the segment.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Values* For a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate.

---

**att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [1. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* *term list item bibl listBibl idno*

*Attributes* *Attributes*

**@sortKey** supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `data.word`

*Values* a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent.

David's other principal backer, Josiah

ha-Kohen **<index**

indexName="NAMES">

**<term**

sortKey="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.

Azarya**</term>**

**</index>** b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was

David's own first

cousin.

*Note* The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under fourh, and *McCoy* may be alphabetized undermaccoy, while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order alphabetized between a- and AA. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

---

**att.source** provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference.

[3.3.3. 8.3.4. ]

*Module* *tei* — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Members* *q*

*Attributes* Attributes

**@source** (pointer to a bibliographical source reference) provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Values* Must point to one or more bibliographic elements in the TEI header or elsewhere

*Example*

```
<p>
As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a
problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
</p>
```

*Example*

```
<p>
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories
are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we
seem to know.</quote>
</p>
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>.
<pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:
```



```
<publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher>
(<date>2003</date>),
<biblScope type="pp">p.147</biblScope>.

</bibl>
```

**att.spanning** provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [1.3.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* index milestone pb lb

*Attributes* Attributes

**@spanTo** indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.pointer**

*Schematron* The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@spanTo]">

<sch:assert

test="following::\*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@target,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo must follow the current element

<sch:name/> </sch:assert></sch:rule>

*Schematron* La valeur de @spanTo doit identifier un element dans le document actuel <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@spanTo]">

<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2))">@spanTo on

<sch:name/> must point to the identifier of some element in this document</sch:assert></sch:rule>

*Values* points to an element following this one in the current document.

*Note* The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

**att.tableDecoration** provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [14. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* row cell

*Attributes* Attributes

**@role** indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* **data.enumerated**

*Suggested values include:* **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

**data** data values. [Default]

*Note* When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the role attribute of the parent <row> element.

**@rows** indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Default* 1

*Values* A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell (or row) spans several rows.

*Note* Where several cells span several rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

**@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.count

*Default* 1

*Values* A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns.

*Note* Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

---

**att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* add del

*Attributes* Attributes att.editLike ( @evidence, @source, @instant ) ( att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope ) ( att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence ) ) ) ( att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

**@hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.pointer

*Values* must refer to a <handNote> element, typically declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1. ).

**@status** indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Sample values include:* **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

**duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

**excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

**shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

**unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty. [Default]

*Note* Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

**@cause** documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Legal values are:* **fix** repeated for the purpose of fixation

**unclear** repeated to clarify a previously illegible or badly written text or mark

**@seq** (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

*Status* Mandatory when applicable

*Datatype* data.count

---

**att.translatable** provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* desc gloss

*Attributes* Attributes

**@versionDate** specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.temporal.w3c

*Note* The versionDate attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the versionDate value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

---

**att.typed** provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Members* cit gloss term corr reg add del name rs date time ptr ref label head note  
 milestone pb lb bibl listBibl relatedItem lg change text div trailer figure anchor seg s  
 w pc ident

*Attributes* Attributes

**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

```
<div
  type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg
    type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
  <lg
    type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
</div>
```

*Note* The type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

**@subtype** provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* data.enumerated

*Note* The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its type attribute.

*Schematron* <sch:rule context="\*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The  
 <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also  
 categorized in general with @type</sch:assert></sch:rule>

*Note* When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used.  
 Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are  
 to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList>  
 element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4. .

## Macros

---

**data.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Used by*

*Declaration* data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"

*Note* Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, data.probability may be used instead or in addition.

**data.code** defines the range of attribute values expressing a coded value by means of a pointer to some other element which contains a definition for it.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by*

*Declaration* `data.code = data.word`

*Note* It will usually be the case that the item pointed to is to be found somewhere else in the current TEI document, typically in the header, but this is not mandatory.

---

**data.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* Element:

- table/@rows
- table/@cols

*Declaration* `data.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

*Note* Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted

---

**data.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by*

*Declaration*

`data.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\+\\-]+" }`

*Example*

`<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>`

*Example*

`<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>`

*Example*

`<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>`

*Example*

`<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>`

*Note* A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second)

number-letter pairs are present, then the separator **T** must precede the first time number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

---

**data.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Used by*

*Declaration* `data.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

*Example*

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

*Example*

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

*Example*

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

*Note* A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter **P**; the letter gives the unit and may be **Y** (year), **M** (month), **D** (day), **H** (hour), **M** (minute), or **S** (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the **S** number, which may have a decimal component (using **.** as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the **H** (hour), **M** (minute), or **S** (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator **T** must precede the first time number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

---

**data.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Used by* Element:

- abbr/@type
- att/@scheme
- availability/@status
- biblScope/@unit
- biblScope/@type
- divGen/@type
- formula/@notation
- gap/@agent
- gi/@scheme
- idno/@type

- list/@type
- num/@type
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- q/@type
- stage/@type
- teiHeader/@type
- title/@type
- title/@level
- titlePage/@type
- titlePart/@type
- unclear/@agent

*Declaration* `data.enumerated = data.name`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.

---

**data.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* Element:

- language/@ident

*Declaration* `data.language = xsd:language`

*Note* The values for this attribute are language tags as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 4646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice. A language tag, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

**region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case. The list of codes can be found at <http://www.iso.org/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-lists/index.html>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

**variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

**extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

**private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with **x-**) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI conformant, a corresponding `<language>` element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been grandfathered from previous specifications. Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with **x-**, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding `<language>` element in the TEI header. Examples include

**sn** Shona

**zh-TW** Taiwanese

**zh-Hant-HK** Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

**en-SL** English as spoken in Sierra Leone

**pl** Polish

**es-MX** Spanish as spoken in Mexico

**es-419** Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

---

**data.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* `att data.enumerated` `giElement`:

- `index/@indexName`

*Declaration* `data.name = xsd:Name`



*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

---

**data.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by*

*Declaration* `data.namespace = xsd:anyURI`

*Note* The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*

---

**data.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* Element:

- `num/@value`

*Declaration*

```
data.numeric =  
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

*Note* Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, E notation, a variant of exponential notation, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3. A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

---

**data.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display on the web.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by*

*Declaration*

```
data.outputMeasurement =  
  token  
  {  
    pattern = "[\\-+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  
  }
```

*Example*

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters
<mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
  between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath,
  all on a white
  background.</figDesc>
  <graphic
    height="600px"
    width="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

*Note* These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

---

**data.pattern** (regular expression pattern) defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Used by*

*Declaration* **data.pattern = token**

*Note* A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)

---

**data.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI pointer to any other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

*Module* tei — List, of, Elements, and Described

*Used by* Element:

- catRef/@scheme
- change/@target
- classCode/@scheme
- gap/@hand
- keywords/@scheme
- note/@targetEnd
- relatedItem/@target
- unclear/@hand
- w/@lemmaRef

*Declaration* **data.pointer = xsd:anyURI**

*Note* The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs)* mapping to URIs. For

example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/` is encoded as `http://xn--4gbrim.xn---rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

---

**data.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by*

*Declaration*

```
data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }
```

*Note* Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

---

**data.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes* specification.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* Element:

- `docDate/@when`

*Declaration*

```
data.temporal.w3c =  
  xsd:date  
| xsd:gYear  
| xsd:gMonth  
| xsd:gDay  
| xsd:gYearMonth  
| xsd:gMonthDay  
| xsd:time  
| xsd:dateTime
```

*Note* If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

---

**data.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

*Module* `tei` — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* Element:

- `w/@lemma`

*Declaration* `data.text = string`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single token in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

---

**data.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* Element:

- note/@anchored
- pc/@pre

*Declaration* `data.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

*Note* The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.

*Note* This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: **data.xTruthValue**.

---

**data.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI version number.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* Element:

- teiCorpus/@version

*Declaration*

`data.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

*Note* The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/version>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

---

**data.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* data.codeElement:

- biblScope/@from
- biblScope/@to
- code/@lang
- gap/@reason
- unclear/@reason

*Declaration*

`data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

---

**data.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

*Module* tei — List, **of, Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by*

*Declaration*

```
data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
```

*Note* In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue.

---

**macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* desc figDesc

*Declaration*

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

---

**macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* add cell corr del docEdition emph hi l orig p ref reg seg sic signed title titlePart unclear

*Declaration*

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg )*
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* abbr addrLine author biblScope dateline distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor expan extent foreign gloss label mentioned name num pubPlace publisher rs s salute soCalled speaker term trailer

*Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

---

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* authority classCode funder language principal resp sponsor

*Declaration*

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

---

**macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei — List, **of**, **Elements**, and **Described**

*Used by* change item licence note q stage

*Declaration*

```
macro.specialPara =  
  (  
    text  
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.divPart      | model.global
```